

2018

INTERNATIONAL CODES

IECC®

A Member of the International Code Family®

INTERNATIONAL  
**ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE**®



2018

INTERNATIONAL CODES®

## 2018 I-CODE BONUS OFFER

Get a **free 45-day online subscription** to ICC's *premiumACCESS™* 2018 I-Codes Complete Collection. Test drive many powerful, time-saving tools available to you from *premiumACCESS*. To activate your bonus, visit [www.iccsafe.org/codebonus](http://www.iccsafe.org/codebonus).

# IECC®

A Member of the International Code Family®

## INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE®



## 2018 International Energy Conservation Code®

First Printing: August 2017  
Second Printing: August 2018  
Third Printing: March 2019  
Fourth Printing: March 2020

ISBN: 978-1-60983-749-5 (soft-cover edition)

COPYRIGHT © 2017  
by  
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

Date of First Publication: August 31, 2017

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This 2018 *International Energy Conservation Code*® is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. (“ICC”). Without advance written permission from the ICC, no part of this book may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, IL 60478. Phone 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

Trademarks: “International Code Council,” the “International Code Council” logo, “ICC,” the “ICC” logo, “International Energy Conservation Code,” “IECC” and other names and trademarks appearing in this book are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

T025047

PRINTED IN THE USA

# PREFACE

## Introduction

The *International Energy Conservation Code*® (IECC®) establishes minimum requirements for energy-efficient buildings using prescriptive and performance-related provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles that make possible the use of new materials and new energy-efficient designs. This 2018 edition is fully compatible with all of the *International Codes*® (I-Codes®) published by the International Code Council® (ICC®), including the *International Building Code*®, *International Existing Building Code*®, *International Fire Code*®, *International Fuel Gas Code*®, *International Green Construction Code*®, *International Mechanical Code*®, *International Plumbing Code*®, *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*®, *International Property Maintenance Code*®, *International Residential Code*®, *International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*®, *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code*®, *International Zoning Code*® and *International Code Council Performance Code*®.

This code contains separate provisions for commercial buildings and for low-rise residential buildings (3 stories or less in height above grade). Each set of provisions, IECC—Commercial Provisions and IECC—Residential Provisions, is separately applied to buildings within its respective scope. Each set of provisions is to be treated separately. Each contains a Scope and Administration chapter, a Definitions chapter, a General Requirements chapter, a chapter containing energy efficiency requirements and existing building provisions applicable to buildings within its scope.

The I-Codes, including this *International Energy Conservation Code*, are used in a variety of ways in both the public and private sectors. Most industry professionals are familiar with the I-Codes as the basis of laws and regulations in communities across the U.S. and in other countries. However, the impact of the codes extends well beyond the regulatory arena, as they are used in a variety of nonregulatory settings, including:

- Voluntary compliance programs such as those promoting sustainability, energy efficiency and disaster resistance.
- The insurance industry, to estimate and manage risk, and as a tool in underwriting and rate decisions.
- Certification and credentialing of individuals involved in the fields of building design, construction and safety.
- Certification of building and construction-related products.
- U.S. federal agencies, to guide construction in an array of government-owned properties.
- Facilities management.
- “Best practices” benchmarks for designers and builders, including those who are engaged in projects in jurisdictions that do not have a formal regulatory system or a governmental enforcement mechanism.
- College, university and professional school textbooks and curricula.
- Reference works related to building design and construction.

In addition to the codes themselves, the code development process brings together building professionals on a regular basis. It provides an international forum for discussion and deliberation about building design, construction methods, safety, performance requirements, technological advances and innovative products.

## Development

This 2018 edition presents the code as originally issued, with changes reflected in the 2000 through 2015 editions and further changes approved through the ICC Code Development Process through 2017. A new edition such as this is promulgated every 3 years.

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of an energy conservation code that adequately conserves energy; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

## Maintenance

The *International Energy Conservation Code* is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The ICC Code Development Process reflects principles of openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus, the principles embodied in OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government's use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone; there is no cost to participate, and people can participate without travel cost through the ICC's cloud-based app, cdp-Access®. A broad cross section of interests are represented in the ICC Code Development Process. The codes, which are updated regularly, include safeguards that allow for emergency action when required for health and safety reasons.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC's important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Multifamily Housing Council (NMHC)

The code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC's governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The contents of this work are subject to change through the code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the International Code Council.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code.

## Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)

In each code development cycle, proposed changes to the code are considered at the Committee Action Hearings by the applicable International Code Development Committee. The IECC—Commercial Provisions (sections designated with a "C" prior to the section number) are primarily maintained by the Commercial Energy Code Development Committee. The IECC—Residential Provisions (sections designated with an "R" prior to the section number) are maintained by the Residential Energy Code Development Committee. This is designated in the chapter headings by a [CE] and [RE], respectively.

Maintenance responsibilities for the IECC are designated as follows:

[CE] = International Commercial Energy Conservation Code Development Committee

[RE] = International Residential Energy Conservation Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2021 edition of the I-Codes, there will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years.

<b>Group A Codes (Heard in 2018, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 8, 2018)</b>	<b>Group B Codes (Heard in 2019, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 7, 2019)</b>
<b>International Building Code</b> – Egress (Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E) – Fire Safety (Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26) – General (Chapters 2–6, 12, 27–33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K, N)	Administrative Provisions (Chapter 1 of all codes except IECC, IRC and IgCC, administrative updates to currently referenced standards, and designated definitions)
<b>International Fire Code</b>	<b>International Building Code</b> – Structural (Chapters 15–25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M)
<b>International Fuel Gas Code</b>	<b>International Existing Building Code</b>
<b>International Mechanical Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial</b>
<b>International Plumbing Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Residential</b> – IECC—Residential – IRC—Energy (Chapter 11)
<b>International Property Maintenance Code</b>	<b>International Green Construction Code</b> (Chapter 1)
<b>International Private Sewage Disposal Code</b>	<b>International Residential Code</b> – IRC—Building (Chapters 1–10, Appendices E, F, H, J, K, L, M, O, Q, R, S, T)
<b>International Residential Code</b> – IRC—Mechanical (Chapters 12–23) – IRC—Plumbing (Chapters 25–33, Appendices G, I, N, P)	
<b>International Swimming Pool and Spa Code</b>	
<b>International Wildland-Urban Interface Code</b>	
<b>International Zoning Code</b>	

**Note:** Proposed changes to the ICC *Performance Code*™ will be heard by the code development committee noted in brackets [ ] in the text of the ICC *Performance Code*™.

## Marginal Markings

Solid vertical lines in the margins within the body of the code indicate a technical change from the requirements of the 2015 edition. Deletion indicators in the form of an arrow (➡) are provided in the margin where an entire section, paragraph, exception or table has been deleted or an item in a list of items or a table has been deleted.

## Coordination of the International Codes

The coordination of technical provisions is one of the strengths of the ICC family of model codes. The codes can be used as a complete set of complementary documents, which will provide users with full integration and coordination of technical provisions. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. To make sure that each individual code is as complete as possible, some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in some of the model codes. This allows users maximum flexibility in their application of the I-Codes.

## Italicized Terms

Selected words and terms defined in Chapter 2, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text and the Chapter 2 definition applies. Where such words and terms are not italicized, common-use definitions apply. The words and terms selected have code-specific definitions that the user should read carefully to facilitate better understanding of the code.

## Adoption

The International Code Council maintains a copyright in all of its codes and standards. Maintaining copyright allows the ICC to fund its mission through sales of books, in both print and electronic formats. The ICC welcomes adoption of its codes by jurisdictions that recognize and acknowledge the ICC's copyright in the code, and further acknowledge the substantial shared value of the public/private partnership for code development between jurisdictions and the ICC.

The ICC also recognizes the need for jurisdictions to make laws available to the public. All I-Codes and I-Standards, along with the laws of many jurisdictions, are available for free in a nondownloadable form on the ICC's website. Jurisdictions should contact the ICC at [adoptions@iccsafe.org](mailto:adoptions@iccsafe.org) to learn how to adopt and distribute laws based on the *International Energy Conservation Code* in a manner that provides necessary access, while maintaining the ICC's copyright.

To facilitate adoption, two sections of this code contain blanks for fill-in information that needs to be supplied by the adopting jurisdiction as part of the adoption legislation. For this code, please see:

Sections C101.1 and R101.1. Insert: [NAME OF JURISDICTION].

# EFFECTIVE USE OF THE INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE

The *International Energy Conservation Code* (IECC) is a model code that regulates minimum energy conservation requirements for new buildings. The IECC addresses energy conservation requirements for all aspects of energy uses in both commercial and residential construction, including heating and ventilating, lighting, water heating, and power usage for appliances and building systems.

The IECC is a design document. For example, before one constructs a building, the designer must determine the minimum insulation *R*-values and fenestration *U*-factors for the building exterior envelope. Depending on whether the building is for residential use or for commercial use, the IECC sets forth minimum requirements for exterior envelope insulation, window and door *U*-factors and SHGC ratings, duct insulation, lighting and power efficiency, and water distribution insulation.

## Arrangement and Format of the 2018 IECC

The IECC contains two separate sets of provisions—one for commercial buildings and one for residential buildings. Each set of provisions is applied separately to buildings within their scope. The IECC—Commercial Provisions apply to all buildings except for residential buildings three stories or less in height. The IECC—Residential Provisions apply to detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings as well as *Group R-2, R-3 and R-4* buildings three stories or less in height. These scopes are based on the definitions of “Commercial building” and “Residential building,” respectively, in Chapter 2 of each set of provisions. Note that the IECC—Commercial Provisions therefore contain provisions for residential buildings four stories or greater in height. Each set of provisions is divided into five different parts:

Chapters	Subjects
1–2	Administration and definitions
3	Climate zones and general materials requirements
4	Energy efficiency requirements
5	Existing buildings
6	Referenced standards

The following is a chapter-by-chapter synopsis of the scope and intent of the provisions of the *International Energy Conservation Code* and applies to both the commercial and residential energy provisions:

**Chapter 1 Scope and Administration.** This chapter contains provisions for the application, enforcement and administration of subsequent requirements of the code. In addition to establishing the scope of the code, Chapter 1 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining “due process of law” in enforcing the energy conservation criteria contained in the body of this code. Only through careful observation of the administrative provisions can the code official reasonably expect to demonstrate that “equal protection under the law” has been provided.

**Chapter 2 Definitions.** Chapter 2 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of the code. Codes are technical documents and every word, term and punctuation mark can impact the meaning of the code text and the intended results. The code often uses terms that have a unique meaning in the code and the code meaning can differ substantially from the ordinarily understood meaning of the term as used outside of the code.

The terms defined in Chapter 2 are deemed to be of prime importance in establishing the meaning and intent of the code text. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

Additional definitions regarding climate zones are found in Tables 301.3(1) and (2). These are not listed in Chapter 2.

Where understanding of a term's definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding of a particular code provision, the term is shown in *italics*. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

**Chapter 3 General Requirements.** Chapter 3 specifies the climate zones that will serve to establish the exterior design conditions. In addition, Chapter 3 provides interior design conditions that are used as a basis for assumptions in heating and cooling load calculations, and provides basic material requirements for insulation materials and fenestration materials.

Climate has a major impact on the energy use of most buildings. The code establishes many requirements such as wall and roof insulation *R*-values, window and door thermal transmittance (*U*-factors) and provisions that affect the mechanical systems based on the climate where the building is located. This chapter contains information that will be used to properly assign the building location into the correct climate zone and is used as the basis for establishing or eliminating requirements.

**Chapter 4 Energy Efficiency.** Chapter 4 of each set of provisions contains the technical requirements for energy efficiency.

**Commercial Energy Efficiency.** Chapter 4 of the IECC—Commercial Provisions contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of most types of commercial buildings and residential buildings greater than three stories in height above grade. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new commercial construction and new residential construction greater than three stories in height, and promotes the effective use of energy. In addition to energy conservation requirements for the building envelope, this chapter contains requirements that impact energy efficiency for the HVAC systems, the electrical systems and the plumbing systems. It should be noted, however, that requirements are contained in other codes that have an impact on energy conservation. For instance, requirements for water flow rates are regulated by the *International Plumbing Code*.

**Residential Energy Efficiency.** Chapter 4 of the IECC—Residential Provisions contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of residential buildings regulated under this code. It should be noted that the definition of a *residential building* in this code is unique for this code. In this code, a *residential building* is a detached one- and two-family dwelling and multiple single-family dwellings as well as R-2, R-3 or R-4 buildings three stories or less in height. All other buildings, including residential buildings greater than three stories in height, are regulated by the energy conservation requirements in the IECC—Commercial Provisions. The applicable portions of a residential building must comply with the provisions within this chapter for energy efficiency. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new residential construction and promotes the effective use of energy. The provisions within the chapter promote energy efficiency in the building envelope, the heating and cooling system and the service water heating system of the building.

**Chapter 5 Existing Buildings.** Chapter 5 of each set of provisions contains the technical energy efficiency requirements for existing buildings. Chapter 5 provisions address the maintenance of buildings in compliance with the code as well as how additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy need to be addressed from the standpoint of energy efficiency. Specific provisions are provided for historic buildings.

**Chapter 6 Referenced Standards.** The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 6 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the code official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 6 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based on the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

## Abbreviations and Notations

The following is a list of common abbreviations and units of measurement used in this code. Some of the abbreviations are for terms defined in Chapter 2. Others are terms used in various tables and text of the code.

AFUE	Annual fuel utilization efficiency
bhp	Brake horsepower (fans)
Btu	British thermal unit
Btu/h·ft <sup>2</sup>	Btu per hour per square foot
C-factor	See Chapter 2—Definitions
CDD	Cooling degree days
cfm	Cubic feet per minute
cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>	Cubic feet per minute per square foot
ci	Continuous insulation
COP	Coefficient of performance
DCV	Demand control ventilation
°C	Degrees Celsius
°F	Degrees Fahrenheit
DWHR	Drain water heat recovery
DX	Direct expansion
<i>E<sub>c</sub></i>	Combustion efficiency
<i>E<sub>v</sub></i>	Ventilation efficiency
<i>E<sub>t</sub></i>	Thermal efficiency
EER	Energy efficiency ratio
EF	Energy factor
ERI	Energy rating index
<i>F</i> -factor	See Chapter 2—Definitions

FDD	Fault detection and diagnostics
FEG	Fan efficiency grade
FL	Full load
ft <sup>2</sup>	Square foot
gpm	Gallons per minute
HDD	Heating degree days
hp	Horsepower
HSPF	Heating seasonal performance factor
HVAC	Heating, ventilating and air conditioning
IEER	Integrated energy efficiency ratio
IPLV	Integrated Part Load Value
Kg/m <sup>2</sup>	Kilograms per square meter
kW	Kilowatt
LPD	Light power density (lighting power allowance)
L/s	Liters per second
Ls	Liner system
m <sup>2</sup>	Square meters
MERV	Minimum efficiency reporting value
NAECA	National Appliance Energy Conservation Act
NPLV	Nonstandard Part Load Value
Pa	Pascal
PF	Projection factor
pcf	Pounds per cubic foot
psf	Pounds per square foot
PTAC	Packaged terminal air conditioner
PTHP	Packaged terminal heat pump
R-value	See Chapter 2—Definitions
SCOP	Sensible coefficient of performance
SEER	Seasonal energy efficiency ratio
SHGC	Solar Heat Gain Coefficient
SPVAC	Single packaged vertical air conditioner
SPVHP	Single packaged vertical heat pump
SRI	Solar reflectance index
SWHF	Service water heat recovery factor
U-factor	See Chapter 2—Definitions
VAV	Variable air volume
VRF	Variable refrigerant flow
VT	Visible transmittance
W	Watts
w.c.	Water column
w.g.	Water gauge

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>IECC—COMMERCIAL PROVISIONS.....</b>	<b>C-1</b>	<b>IECC—RESIDENTIAL PROVISIONS.....</b>	<b>R-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>	<b>C-3</b>	<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>	<b>R-3</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>C-7</b>	<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>R-7</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS ....</b>	<b>C-13</b>	<b>CHAPTER 3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS ....</b>	<b>R-11</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY.....</b>	<b>C-31</b>	<b>CHAPTER 4 RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY.....</b>	<b>R-29</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 EXISTING BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>C-101</b>	<b>CHAPTER 5 EXISTING BUILDINGS .....</b>	<b>R-45</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 REFERENCED STANDARDS....</b>	<b>C-105</b>	<b>CHAPTER 6 REFERENCED STANDARDS....</b>	<b>R-49</b>
<b>APPENDIX CA SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL .....</b>	<b>C-113</b>	<b>APPENDIX RA SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES.....</b>	<b>R-53</b>
<b>INDEX .....</b>	<b>C-115</b>	<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>R-55</b>



# IECC—COMMERCIAL PROVISIONS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>	<b>C-3</b>
<b>PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION.....</b>	<b>C-3</b>
Section	
C101 Scope and General Requirements. ....	C-3
C102 Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment .....	C-3
<b>PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....</b>	<b>C-3</b>
C103 Construction Documents .....	C-3
C104 Fees.....	C-5
C105 Inspections .....	C-5
C106 Validity.....	C-5
C107 Referenced Standards.....	C-6
C108 Stop Work Order .....	C-6
C109 Board of Appeals .....	C-6
<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>C-7</b>
Section	
C201 General .....	C-7
C202 General Definitions .....	C-7
<b>CHAPTER 3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....</b>	<b>C-13</b>
Section	
C301 Climate Zones. ....	C-13
C302 Design Conditions .....	C-28
C303 Materials, Systems and Equipment .....	C-28
<b>CHAPTER 4 COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY.....</b>	<b>C-31</b>
Section	
C401 General.....	C-31
C402 Building Envelope Requirements .....	C-31
C403 Building Mechanical Systems .....	C-41
C404 Service Water Heating (Mandatory) .....	C-70
C405 Electrical Power and Lighting Systems.....	C-74
C406 Additional Efficiency Packages.....	C-85
C407 Total Building Performance.....	C-89
C408 Maintenance Information and System Commissioning .....	C-95
<b>CHAPTER 5 EXISTING BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>C-101</b>
Section	
C501 General.....	C-101
C502 Additions .....	C-101
C503 Alterations .....	C-102
C504 Repairs .....	C-103
C505 Change of Occupancy or Use .....	C-103
<b>CHAPTER 6 REFERENCED STANDARDS....</b>	<b>C-105</b>
<b>APPENDIX CA SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL.....</b>	<b>C-113</b>
Section	
CA101 Scope.....	C-113
CA102 General Definition .....	C-113
CA103 Solar-ready Zone.....	C-113
<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>C-115</b>



# CHAPTER 1 [CE]

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement. Section 101 identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.

*The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.*

### PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

#### SECTION C101 SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**C101.1 Title.** This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as “this code.”

**C101.2 Scope.** This code applies to *commercial buildings* and the buildings’ sites and associated systems and equipment.

**C101.3 Intent.** This code shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

**C101.4 Applicability.** Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

**C101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings.** Where a building includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

**C101.5 Compliance.** *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

**C101.5.1 Compliance materials.** The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

#### SECTION C102 ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

**C102.1 General.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

**C102.1.1 Above code programs.** The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this code. Buildings *approved* in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified as “mandatory” in Chapter 4 shall be met.

### PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

#### SECTION C103 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

**C103.1 General.** Construction documents and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

**Exception:** The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**C103.2 Information on construction documents.** Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include, but are not limited to, the following as applicable:

1. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
2. Fenestration *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).
3. Area-weighted *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
4. Mechanical system design criteria.
5. Mechanical and service water heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
6. Economizer description.
7. Equipment and system controls.
8. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
9. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
10. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
11. Location of *daylight* zones on floor plans.
12. Air sealing details.

**C103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction.** The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction drawings.

**C103.3 Examination of documents.** The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

**C103.3.1 Approval of construction documents.** When the *code official* issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance." Such *approved* construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

**C103.3.2 Previous approvals.** This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

**C103.3.3 Phased approval.** The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

**C103.4 Amended construction documents.** Changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved* construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

**C103.5 Retention of construction documents.** One set of *approved* construction documents shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

**C103.6 Building documentation and closeout submittal requirements.** The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

**C103.6.1 Record documents.** Construction documents shall be updated to convey a record of the completed work. Such updates shall include mechanical, electrical and control drawings that indicate all changes to size, type and location of components, equipment and assemblies.

**C103.6.2 Compliance documentation.** Energy code compliance documentation and supporting calculations shall be delivered in one document to the building owner as part of the project record documents or manuals, or as a standalone document. This document shall include the specific energy code edition utilized for compliance determination for each system, documentation demonstrating compliance with Section C303.1.3 for each fenestration product installed, and the interior lighting power compliance path, building area or space-by-space, used to calculate the lighting power allowance.

For projects complying with Item 2 of Section C401.2, the documentation shall include:

1. The envelope insulation compliance path.
2. All compliance calculations including those required by Sections C402.1.5, C403.8.1, C405.3 and C405.4.

For projects complying with Section C407, the documentation shall include that required by Sections C407.4.1 and C407.4.2.

**C103.6.3 Systems operation control.** Training shall be provided to those responsible for maintaining and operating equipment included in the manuals required by Section C103.6.2.

The training shall include:

1. Review of manuals and permanent certificate.
2. Hands-on demonstration of all normal maintenance procedures, normal operating modes, and all emergency shutdown and startup procedures.
3. Training completion report.

## SECTION C104 FEES

**C104.1 Fees.** A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section C104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

**C104.2 Schedule of permit fees.** A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

**C104.3 Work commencing before permit issuance.** Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the *code official* that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

**C104.4 Related fees.** The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

**C104.5 Refunds.** The *code official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

## SECTION C105 INSPECTIONS

**C105.1 General.** Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the *code official*, his or her designated agent or an approved agency, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the *code official* nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

**C105.2 Required inspections.** The *code official*, his or her designated agent or an approved agency, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections C105.2.1 through C105.2.6.

**C105.2.1 Footing and foundation insulation.** Inspections shall verify the footing and foundation insulation *R*-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

**C105.2.2 Thermal envelope.** Inspections shall verify the correct type of insulation, *R*-values, location of insulation, fenestration, *U*-factor, SHGC and VT, and that air leakage controls are properly installed, as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

**C105.2.3 Plumbing system.** Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, *R*-values, protection required, controls and heat traps as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

**C105.2.4 Mechanical system.** Inspections shall verify the installed HVAC equipment for the correct type and size, controls, insulation, *R*-values, system and damper air leakage, minimum fan efficiency, energy recovery and economizer as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

**C105.2.5 Electrical system.** Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components, and meters as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

**C105.2.6 Final inspection.** The final inspection shall include verification of the installation and proper operation of all required building controls, and documentation verifying activities associated with required *building commissioning* have been conducted in accordance with Section C408.

**C105.3 Reinspection.** A building shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.

**C105.4 Approved inspection agencies.** The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the building design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the building components and systems that they are inspecting.

**C105.5 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

**C105.6 Reinspection and testing.** Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.

**C105.7 Approval.** After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the *code official*.

**C105.7.1 Revocation.** The *code official* is authorized to suspend or revoke, in writing, a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

## SECTION C106 VALIDITY

**C106.1 General.** If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION C107 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**C107.1 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in Chapter 6, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C107.1.1 and C107.1.2.

**C107.1.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**C107.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.** Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

**C107.2 Application of references.** References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

**C107.3 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

### SECTION C108 STOP WORK ORDER

**C108.1 Authority.** Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner either contrary to the provisions of this code or dangerous or unsafe, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

**C108.2 Issuance.** The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, the owner's authorized agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

**C108.3 Emergencies.** Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

**C108.4 Failure to comply.** Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be liable to a fine as set by the applicable governing authority.

### SECTION C109 BOARD OF APPEALS

**C109.1 General.** In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The *code official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body

and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the *code official*.

**C109.2 Limitations on authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

**C109.3 Qualifications.** The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

## CHAPTER 2 [CE]

# DEFINITIONS

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.

### SECTION C201 GENERAL

**C201.1 Scope.** Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

**C201.2 Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

**C201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code* or the *International Residential Code* shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

**C201.4 Terms not defined.** Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

### SECTION C202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

**ABOVE-GRADE WALL.** See “Wall, above-grade.”

**ACCESS (TO).** That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, or similar obstruction.

**ADDITION.** An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

**AIR BARRIER.** One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope and its assemblies.

**AIR CURTAIN.** A device, installed at the building entrance, that generates and discharges a laminar air stream intended to prevent the infiltration of external, unconditioned air into the conditioned spaces, or the loss of interior, conditioned air to the outside.

**ALTERATION.** Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

**APPROVED.** Acceptable to the code official.

**APPROVED AGENCY.** An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certifica-

tion, where such agency has been approved by the *code official*.

**AUTOMATIC.** Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see “Manual”).

**BELLOW-GRADE WALL.** See “Wall, below-grade.”

**BOILER, MODULATING.** A boiler that is capable of more than a single firing rate in response to a varying temperature or heating load.

**BOILER SYSTEM.** One or more boilers, their piping and controls that work together to supply steam or hot water to heat output devices remote from the boiler.

**BUBBLE POINT.** The refrigerant liquid saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

**BUILDING.** Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

**BUILDING COMMISSIONING.** A process that verifies and documents that the selected building systems have been designed, installed, and function according to the owner’s project requirements and construction documents, and to minimum code requirements.

**BUILDING ENTRANCE.** Any door, set of doors, doorway, or other form of portal that is used to gain access to the building from the outside by the public.

**BUILDING SITE.** A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

**BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE.** The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and exempt or unconditioned space.

**C-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F) [W/(m<sup>2</sup> • K)].

**CAPTIVE KEY OVERRIDE.** A lighting control that will not release the key that activates the override when the lighting is on.

**CAVITY INSULATION.** Insulating material located between framing members.

**DEFINITIONS**

**CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY.** A change in the use of a building or a portion of a building that results in any of the following:

1. A *change of occupancy* classification.
2. A change from one group to another group within an occupancy classification.
3. Any change in use within a group for which there is a change in the application of the requirements of this code.

**CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM.** A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to the fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

**CLIMATE ZONE.** A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

**CODE OFFICIAL.** The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) – COOLING.** The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) – HEATING.** The ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system, including the compressor and, if applicable, auxiliary heat, under designated operating conditions.

**COMMERCIAL BUILDING.** For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of "Residential building."

**COMPUTER ROOM.** A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design electronic data equipment power density of less than 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area or a connected design electronic data equipment load of less than 10 kW.

**CONDENSING UNIT.** A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more refrigerant compressors, refrigerant condensers (air-cooled, evaporatively cooled, or water-cooled), condenser fans and motors (where used) and factory-supplied accessories.

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA.** The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

**CONDITIONED SPACE.** An area, room or space that is enclosed within the building thermal envelope and is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

→ **CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci).** Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope.

**CRAWL SPACE WALL.** The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

**CURTAIN WALL.** Fenestration products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

**DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL.** A device or system that provides automatic control of electric light levels based on the amount of daylight in a space.

**DAYLIGHT ZONE.** That portion of a building's interior floor area that is illuminated by natural light.

**DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV).** A ventilation system capability that provides for the automatic reduction of outdoor air intake below design rates when the actual occupancy of spaces served by the system is less than design occupancy.

**DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM.** A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe.

**DUCT.** A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

**DUCT SYSTEM.** A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

**DWELLING UNIT.** A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

**DYNAMIC GLAZING.** Any fenestration product that has the fully reversible ability to change its performance properties, including *U-factor*, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC), or visible transmittance (VT).

**ECONOMIZER, AIR.** A duct and damper arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling during mild or cold weather.

**ECONOMIZER, WATER.** A system where the supply air of a cooling system is cooled indirectly with water that is itself cooled by heat or mass transfer to the environment without the use of mechanical cooling.

**ENCLOSED SPACE.** A volume surrounded by solid surfaces such as walls, floors, roofs, and openable devices such as doors and operable windows.

**ENERGY ANALYSIS.** A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

**ENERGY COST.** The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

**ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM.** Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from exhaust air for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor ventilation air prior to supplying the air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

## DEFINITIONS

**ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL.** An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a building.

**ENTRANCE DOOR.** A vertical fenestration product used for occupant ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances utilizing latching hardware and automatic closers and containing over 50 percent glazing specifically designed to withstand heavy-duty usage.

**EQUIPMENT ROOM.** A space that contains either electrical equipment, mechanical equipment, machinery, water pumps or hydraulic pumps that are a function of the building's services.

**EXTERIOR WALL.** Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

**FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP).** The horsepower delivered to the fan's shaft. Brake horsepower does not include the mechanical drive losses such as that from belts and gears.

**FAN EFFICIENCY GRADE (FEG).** A numerical rating identifying the fan's aerodynamic ability to convert shaft power, or impeller power in the case of a direct-driven fan, to air power.

**FAN SYSTEM BHP.** The sum of the fan brake horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at fan system design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

**FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS.** Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system, other than during air economizer operation.

**FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP.** The sum of the motor nameplate horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

**FENESTRATION.** Products classified as either skylights or vertical fenestration.

**Skylights.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls.

**Vertical fenestration.** Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED.** A fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut, or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT.** A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls, and atrium roof systems.

**F-FACTOR.** The perimeter heat loss factor for slab-on-grade floors (Btu/h • ft • °F) [W/(m • K)].

**FLOOR AREA, NET.** The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

**GENERAL LIGHTING.** Lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout an area. General lighting shall not include decorative lighting or lighting that provides a dissimilar level of illumination to serve a specialized application or feature within such area.

**GREENHOUSE.** A structure or a thermally isolated area of a building that maintains a specialized sunlit environment exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants.

**GROUP R.** Buildings or portions of buildings that contain any of the following occupancies as established in the *International Building Code*:

1. *Group R-1.*
2. *Group R-2* where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
3. *Group R-4* where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.

**HEAT TRAP.** An arrangement of piping and fittings, such as elbows, or a commercially available heat trap that prevents thermosyphoning of hot water during standby periods.

**HEATED SLAB.** Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

**HIGH SPEED DOOR.** A nonswinging door used primarily to facilitate vehicular access or material transportation, with a minimum opening rate of 32 inches (813 mm) per second, a minimum closing rate of 24 inches (610 mm) per second and that includes an automatic-closing device.

**HISTORIC BUILDING.** Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

**HUMIDISTAT.** A regulatory device, actuated by changes in humidity, used for automatic control of relative humidity.

**IEC DESIGN H MOTOR.** An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.

## DEFINITIONS

2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**IEC DESIGN N MOTOR.** An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has two, four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**INFILTRATION.** The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

**INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV).** A single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER, COP or kW/ton expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for equipment.

**ISOLATION DEVICES.** Devices that isolate HVAC zones so that they can be operated independently of one another. *Isolation devices* include separate systems, isolation dampers, and controls providing shutoff at terminal boxes.

**LABELED.** Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LINER SYSTEM (Ls).** A system that includes the following:

1. A continuous vapor barrier liner membrane that is installed below the purlins and that is uninterrupted by framing members.
2. An uncompressed, unfaced insulation resting on top of the liner membrane and located between the purlins.

For multilayer installations, the last rated *R*-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached.

**LISTED.** Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LOW-SLOPED ROOF.** A roof having a slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

## LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER

**TRANSFORMER.** A transformer that is air-cooled, does not use oil as a coolant, has an input voltage less than or equal to 600 volts and is rated for operation at a frequency of 60 hertz.

**LUMINAIRE-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS.** A lighting system consisting of one or more luminaires with embedded lighting control logic, occupancy and ambient light sensors, wireless networking capabilities and local override switching capability, where required.

**MANUAL.** Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "Automatic").

**NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER.** The nominal motor output power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.

**NEMA DESIGN A MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque as shown in paragraph 12.38.1 of NEMA MG 1.
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.1 of NEMA MG 1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.1 of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG 1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 of NEMA MG 1 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

**NEMA DESIGN B MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting.
2. It develops locked-rotor, breakdown, and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in Sections 12.38, 12.39 and 12.40 of NEMA MG1.
3. It draws locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in Section 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and Section 12.35.2 for 50 hertz of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

**NEMA DESIGN C MOTOR.** A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. Designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque for high-torque applications up to the values shown in paragraph 12.38.2 of NEMA MG1 (incorporated by reference, see A§431.15).
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.2 of NEMA MG1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.2 of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

**NETWORKED GUESTROOM CONTROL SYSTEM.** A control system, accessible from the front desk or other central location associated with a *Group R-1* building, that is capable of identifying the occupancy status of each guestroom according to a timed schedule, and is capable of controlling HVAC in each hotel and motel guestroom separately.

**NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV).** A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated and referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions, for units that are not designed to operate at AHRI standard rating conditions.

**OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL.** An automatic control device or system that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

**ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY.** Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or the internal heat of the earth. The energy system providing on-site renewable energy shall be located on the project site.

**OPAQUE DOOR.** A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

**POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS.** A fan consisting of a centrifugal or axial impeller with an integral driver in a weather-resistant housing and with a base designed to fit, usually by means of a curb, over a wall or roof opening.

**PROPOSED DESIGN.** A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

**RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM.** A heating system that transfers heat to objects and surfaces within a conditioned space, primarily by infrared radiation.

**READY ACCESS (TO).** That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

**REFRIGERANT DEW POINT.** The refrigerant vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

**REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C), that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>).

**REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C), that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>).

**REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, LOW TEMPERATURE.** Systems for maintaining food product in a frozen state in refrigeration applications.

**REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MEDIUM TEMPERATURE.** Systems for maintaining food product above freezing in refrigeration applications.

**REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL.** An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective

design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

**REPAIR.** The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

**REROOFING.** The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "Roof recover" and "Roof replacement."

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDING.** For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) and *Group R-2, R-3 and R-4* buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane.

**ROOF ASSEMBLY.** A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment, roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.

**ROOF RECOVER.** The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

**ROOF REPAIR.** Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of its maintenance.

**ROOF REPLACEMENT.** The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

**ROOFTOP MONITOR.** A raised section of a roof containing vertical fenestration along one or more sides.

**R-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area (h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F/Btu) [(m<sup>2</sup> • K)/W].

**SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE.** The saturation temperature corresponding to the measured refrigerant pressure at the condenser inlet for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, and the arithmetic average of the dew point and *bubble point* temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance for zeotropic refrigerants.

**SERVICE WATER HEATING.** Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

**SLEEPING UNIT.** A room or space in which people sleep, that can include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are part of a dwelling unit are not *sleeping units*.

**SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR.** A general purpose, alternating current, single speed induction motor.

**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC).** The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

## DEFINITIONS

**STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN.** A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

**STOREFRONT.** A system of doors and windows mulled as a composite fenestration structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. *Storefront* systems include, but are not limited to, exterior fenestration systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on commercial buildings, with or without mulled windows and doors.

**THERMOSTAT.** An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

**TIME SWITCH CONTROL.** An automatic control device or system that controls lighting or other loads, including switching off, based on time schedules.

**U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F) [W/(m<sup>2</sup> • K)].

**VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM.** An engineered direct-expansion (DX) refrigerant system that incorporates a common condensing unit, at least one variable-capacity compressor, a distributed refrigerant piping network to multiple indoor fan heating and cooling units each capable of individual zone temperature control, through integral zone temperature control devices and a common communications network. Variable refrigerant flow utilizes three or more steps of control on common interconnecting piping.

**VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

**VENTILATION AIR.** That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

**VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT].** The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

**VOLTAGE DROP.** A decrease in voltage caused by losses in the wiring systems that connect the power source to the load.

**WALK-IN COOLER.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) and less than 55°F (12.8°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>).

**WALK-IN FREEZER.** An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>).

**WALL, ABOVE-GRADE.** A wall associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is more than 15 percent above

grade and is on the exterior of the building or any wall that is associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is not on the exterior of the building.

**WALL, BELOW-GRADE.** A wall associated with the basement or first story of the building that is part of the *building thermal envelope*, is not less than 85 percent below grade and is on the exterior of the building.

**WATER HEATER.** Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

**ZONE.** A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

## CHAPTER 3 [CE]

# GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 3 addresses broadly applicable requirements that would not be at home in other chapters having more specific coverage of subject matter. This chapter establishes climate zone by U.S. counties and also contains product rating, marking and installation requirements for materials such as insulation, windows, doors and siding.

---

### SECTION C301 CLIMATE ZONES

**C301.1 General.** Climate zones from Figure C301.1 or Table C301.1 shall be used for determining the applicable requirements from Chapter 4. Locations not indicated in Table C301.1 shall be assigned a *climate zone* in accordance with Section C301.3.

**C301.2 Warm humid counties.** In Table C301.1, warm humid counties are identified by an asterisk.

**C301.3 International climate zones.** The *climate zone* for any location outside the United States shall be determined by applying Table C301.3(1) and then Table C301.3(2).

**C301.4 Tropical climate zone.** The tropical *climate zone* shall be defined as:

1. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Commonwealth of Northern Mariana Islands; and
2. Islands in the area between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

101033858

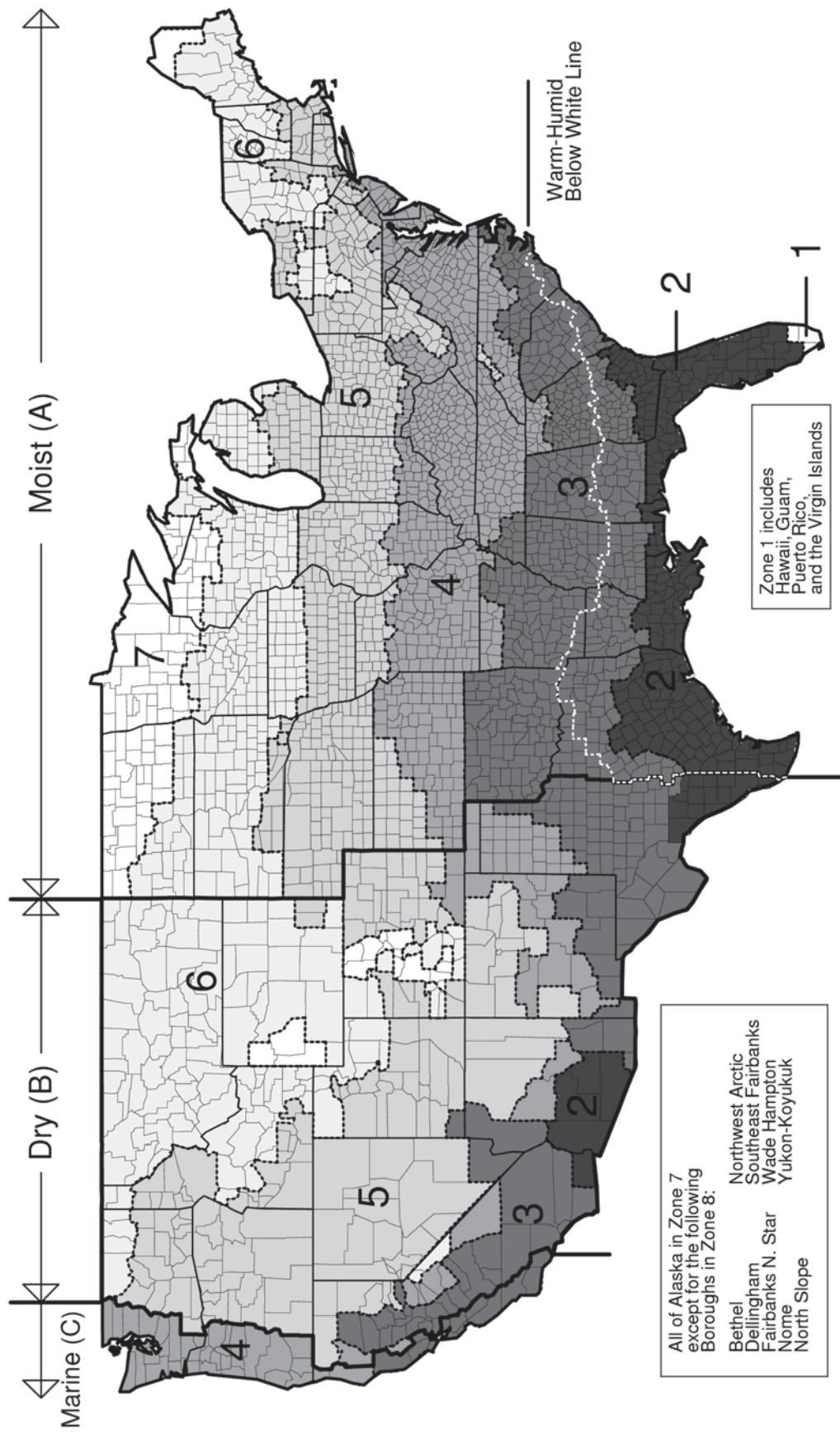


FIGURE C301.1  
CLIMATE ZONES

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE C301.1**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key: A – Moist, B – Dry, C – Marine. Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant.**  
**Asterisk (\*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

**US STATES**

<b>ALABAMA</b>	3A Lee	7 Kodiak Island	3A Calhoun	3A Monroe
3A Autauga*	3A Limestone	7 Lake and Peninsula	4A Carroll	3A Montgomery
2A Baldwin*	3A Lowndes*	7 Matanuska-Susitna	3A Chicot	3A Nevada
3A Barbour*	3A Macon*	8 Nome	3A Clark	4A Newton
3A Bibb	3A Madison	8 North Slope	3A Clay	3A Ouachita
3A Blount	3A Marengo*	8 Northwest Arctic	3A Cleburne	3A Perry
3A Bullock*	3A Marion	7 Prince of Wales-Outer Ketchikan	3A Cleveland	3A Phillips
3A Butler*	3A Marshall	7 Sitka	3A Columbia*	3A Pike
3A Calhoun	2A Mobile*	7 Skagway-Hoonah-Angoon	3A Conway	3A Poinsett
3A Chambers	3A Monroe*	8 Southeast Fairbanks	3A Craighead	3A Polk
3A Cherokee	3A Montgomery*	7 Valdez-Cordova	3A Crawford	3A Pope
3A Chilton	3A Morgan	8 Wade Hampton	3A Crittenden	3A Prairie
3A Choctaw*	3A Perry*	7 Wrangell-Petersburg	3A Cross	3A Pulaski
3A Clarke*	3A Pickens	7 Yakutat	3A Dallas	3A Randolph
3A Clay	3A Pike*	8 Yukon-Koyukuk	3A Desha	3A Saline
3A Cleburne	3A Randolph		3A Drew	3A Scott
3A Coffee*	3A Russell*		3A Faulkner	4A Searcy
3A Colbert	3A Shelby	<b>ARIZONA</b>	3A Franklin	3A Sebastian
3A Conecuh*	3A St. Clair	5B Apache	4A Fulton	3A Sevier*
3A Coosa	3A Sumter	3B Cochise	3A Garland	3A Sharp
3A Covington*	3A Talladega	5B Coconino	3A Grant	3A St. Francis
3A Crenshaw*	3A Tallapoosa	4B Gila	3A Greene	4A Stone
3A Cullman	3A Tuscaloosa	3B Graham	3A Hempstead*	3A Union*
3A Dale*	3A Walker	3B Greenlee	3A Hot Spring	3A Van Buren
3A Dallas*	3A Washington*	2B La Paz	3A Howard	4A Washington
3A DeKalb	3A Wilcox*	2B Maricopa	3A Independence	3A White
3A Elmore*	3A Winston	3B Mohave	4A Izard	3A Woodruff
3A Escambia*		5B Navajo	3A Jackson	3A Yell
	<b>ALASKA</b>	2B Pima	3A Jefferson	<b>CALIFORNIA</b>
3A Etowah	7 Aleutians East	2B Pinal	3A Johnson	3C Alameda
3A Fayette	7 Aleutians West	3B Santa Cruz	3A Lafayette*	6B Alpine
3A Franklin	7 Anchorage	4B Yavapai	3A Lawrence	4B Amador
3A Geneva*	8 Bethel	2B Yuma	3A Lee	3B Butte
3A Greene	7 Bristol Bay		3A Lincoln	4B Calaveras
3A Hale	7 Denali		3A Little River*	3B Colusa
3A Henry*	8 Dillingham	3A Arkansas	3A Logan	3B Contra Costa
3A Houston*	8 Fairbanks North Star	3A Ashley	3A Lonoke	4C Del Norte
3A Jackson	7 Haines	4A Baxter	4A Madison	4B El Dorado
3A Jefferson	7 Juneau	4A Benton	4A Marion	3B Fresno
3A Lamar	7 Kenai Peninsula	4A Boone	3A Miller*	3B Glenn
3A Lauderdale	7 Ketchikan Gateway	3A Bradley	3A Mississippi	
3A Lawrence				

*(continued)*

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

4C Humboldt	3B Yuba	5B Montrose	2A Escambia*	2A Taylor*
2B Imperial	<b>COLORADO</b>	5B Morgan	2A Flagler*	2A Union*
4B Inyo	5B Adams	4B Otero	2A Franklin*	2A Volusia*
3B Kern	6B Alamosa	6B Ouray	2A Gadsden*	2A Wakulla*
3B Kings	5B Arapahoe	7 Park	2A Gilchrist*	2A Walton*
4B Lake	6B Archuleta	5B Phillips	2A Glades*	2A Washington*
5B Lassen	7 Pitkin	7 Pitkin	2A Gulf*	<b>GEORGIA</b>
3B Los Angeles	4B Baca	5B Prowers	2A Hamilton*	2A Appling*
3B Madera	5B Bent	5B Pueblo	2A Hardee*	2A Atkinson*
3C Marin	5B Boulder	6B Rio Blanco	2A Hendry*	2A Bacon*
4B Mariposa	5B Broomfield	7 Rio Grande	2A Hernando*	2A Baker*
3C Mendocino	6B Chaffee	7 Routt	2A Highlands*	3A Baldwin
3B Merced	5B Cheyenne	6B Saguache	2A Hillsborough*	4A Banks
5B Modoc	7 Clear Creek	7 San Juan	2A Holmes*	3A Barrow
6B Mono	6B Conejos	6B San Miguel	2A Indian River*	3A Bartow
3C Monterey	6B Costilla	5B Sedgwick	2A Jackson*	3A Ben Hill*
3C Napa	5B Crowley	7 Summit	2A Jefferson*	2A Berrien*
5B Nevada	6B Custer	5B Teller	2A Lafayette*	3A Bibb
3B Orange	5B Delta	5B Washington	2A Lake*	3A Bleckley*
3B Placer	5B Denver	5B Weld	2A Lee*	2A Brooks*
5B Plumas	6B Dolores	5B Yuma	2A Leon*	2A Bryan*
3B Riverside	5B Douglas	<b>CONNECTICUT</b>	2A Levy*	3A Bulloch*
3B Sacramento	6B Eagle	5A (all)	2A Liberty*	3A Burke
3C San Benito	5B Elbert	<b>DELAWARE</b>	2A Madison*	3A Butts
3B San Bernardino	5B El Paso	4A (all)	2A Manatee*	3A Calhoun*
3B San Diego	5B Fremont	<b>DISTRICT OF</b>	2A Marion*	2A Camden*
3C San Francisco	5B Garfield	<b>COLUMBIA</b>	2A Martin*	3A Candler*
3B San Joaquin	5B Gilpin	4A (all)	1A Miami-Dade*	3A Carroll
3C San Luis Obispo	7 Grand	<b>FLORIDA</b>	1A Monroe*	4A Catoosa
3C San Mateo	7 Gunnison	2A Alachua*	2A Nassau*	2A Charlton*
3C Santa Barbara	7 Hinsdale	2A Baker*	2A Okaloosa*	2A Chatham*
3C Santa Clara	5B Huerfano	2A Bay*	2A Okeechobee*	3A Chattahoochee*
3C Santa Cruz	7 Jackson	2A Bradford*	2A Orange*	4A Chattooga
3B Shasta	5B Jefferson	2A Brevard*	2A Osceola*	3A Cherokee
5B Sierra	5B Kiowa	1A Broward*	2A Palm Beach*	3A Clarke
5B Siskiyou	5B Kit Carson	2A Calhoun*	2A Pasco*	3A Clay*
3B Solano	7 Lake	2A Charlotte*	2A Pinellas*	3A Clayton
3C Sonoma	5B La Plata	2A Citrus*	2A Polk*	2A Clinch*
3B Stanislaus	5B Larimer	2A Clay*	2A Putnam*	3A Cobb
3B Sutter	4B Las Animas	2A Collier*	2A Santa Rosa*	3A Coffee*
3B Tehama	5B Lincoln	2A Columbia*	2A Sarasota*	2A Colquitt*
4B Trinity	5B Logan	2A DeSoto*	2A Seminole*	3A Columbia
3B Tulare	5B Mesa	2A Dixie*	2A St. Johns*	2A Cook*
4B Tuolumne	7 Mineral	2A Duval*	2A St. Lucie*	3A Coweta
3C Ventura	6B Moffat		2A Sumter*	
3B Yolo	5B Montezuma		2A Suwannee*	

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

3A Crawford	2A Lanier*	3A Taylor*	5B Cassia	4A Crawford
3A Crisp*	3A Laurens*	3A Telfair*	6B Clark	5A Cumberland
4A Dade	3A Lee*	3A Terrell*	5B Clearwater	5A DeKalb
4A Dawson	2A Liberty*	2A Thomas*	6B Custer	5A De Witt
2A Decatur*	3A Lincoln	3A Tift*	5B Elmore	5A Douglas
3A DeKalb	2A Long*	2A Toombs*	6B Franklin	5A DuPage
3A Dodge*	2A Lowndes*	4A Towns	6B Fremont	5A Edgar
3A Dooly*	4A Lumpkin	3A Treutlen*	5B Gem	4A Edwards
3A Dougherty*	3A Macon*	3A Troup	5B Gooding	4A Effingham
3A Douglas	3A Madison	3A Turner*	5B Idaho	4A Fayette
3A Early*	3A Marion*	3A Twiggs*	6B Jefferson	5A Ford
2A Echols*	3A McDuffie	4A Union	5B Jerome	4A Franklin
2A Effingham*	2A McIntosh*	3A Upson	5B Kootenai	5A Fulton
3A Elbert	3A Meriwether	4A Walker	5B Latah	4A Gallatin
3A Emanuel*	2A Miller*	3A Walton	6B Lemhi	5A Greene
2A Evans*	2A Mitchell*	2A Ware*	5B Lewis	5A Grundy
4A Fannin	3A Monroe	3A Warren	5B Lincoln	4A Hamilton
3A Fayette	3A Montgomery*	3A Washington	6B Madison	5A Hancock
4A Floyd	3A Morgan	2A Wayne*	5B Minidoka	4A Hardin
3A Forsyth	4A Murray	3A Webster*	5B Nez Perce	5A Henderson
4A Franklin	3A Muscogee	3A Wheeler*	6B Oneida	5A Henry
3A Fulton	3A Newton	4A White	5B Owyhee	5A Iroquois
4A Gilmer	3A Oconee	4A Whitfield	5B Payette	4A Jackson
3A Glascock	3A Oglethorpe	3A Wilcox*	5B Power	4A Jasper
2A Glynn*	3A Paulding	3A Wilkes	5B Shoshone	4A Jefferson
4A Gordon	3A Peach*	3A Wilkinson	6B Teton	5A Jersey
2A Grady*	4A Pickens	3A Worth*	5B Twin Falls	5A Jo Daviess
3A Greene	2A Pierce*	<b>HAWAII</b>	6B Valley	4A Johnson
3A Gwinnett	3A Pike	1A (all)*	5B Washington	5A Kane
4A Habersham	3A Polk	<b>IDAHO</b>	<b>ILLINOIS</b>	5A Kankakee
4A Hall	3A Pulaski*	5B Ada	5A Adams	5A Kendall
3A Hancock	3A Putnam	6B Adams	4A Alexander	5A Knox
3A Haralson	3A Quitman*	6B Bannock	4A Bond	5A Lake
3A Harris	4A Rabun	6B Bear Lake	5A Boone	5A La Salle
3A Hart	3A Randolph*	5B Benewah	5A Brown	4A Lawrence
3A Heard	3A Richmond	6B Bingham	5A Bureau	5A Lee
3A Henry	3A Rockdale	6B Blaine	5A Calhoun	5A Livingston
3A Houston*	3A Schley*	6B Boise	5A Carroll	5A Logan
3A Irwin*	3A Screven*	6B Bonner	5A Cass	5A Macon
3A Jackson	2A Seminole*	6B Bonneville	5A Champaign	4A Macoupin
3A Jasper	3A Spalding	6B Boundary	4A Christian	4A Madison
2A Jeff Davis*	4A Stephens	6B Butte	5A Clark	4A Marion
3A Jefferson	3A Stewart*	6B Camas	4A Clay	5A Marshall
3A Jenkins*	3A Sumter*	5B Canyon	4A Clinton	5A Mason
3A Johnson*	3A Talbot	6B Caribou	5A Coles	4A Massac
3A Jones	3A Taliaferro		5A Cook	5A McDonough
3A Lamar	2A Tattnall*			5A McHenry

(continued)

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A McLean	5A Boone	5A Miami	5A Appanoose	5A Jasper
5A Menard	4A Brown	4A Monroe	5A Audubon	5A Jefferson
5A Mercer	5A Carroll	5A Montgomery	5A Benton	5A Johnson
4A Monroe	5A Cass	5A Morgan	6A Black Hawk	5A Jones
4A Montgomery	4A Clark	5A Newton	5A Boone	5A Keokuk
5A Morgan	5A Clay	5A Noble	6A Bremer	6A Kossuth
5A Moultrie	5A Clinton	4A Ohio	6A Buchanan	5A Lee
5A Ogle	4A Crawford	4A Orange	6A Buena Vista	5A Linn
5A Peoria	4A Daviess	5A Owen	6A Butler	5A Louisa
4A Perry	4A Dearborn	5A Parke	6A Calhoun	5A Lucas
5A Piatt	5A Decatur	4A Perry	5A Carroll	6A Lyon
5A Pike	5A De Kalb	4A Pike	5A Cass	5A Madison
4A Pope	5A Delaware	5A Porter	5A Cedar	5A Mahaska
4A Pulaski	4A Dubois	4A Posey	6A Cerro Gordo	5A Marion
5A Putnam	5A Elkhart	5A Pulaski	6A Cherokee	5A Marshall
4A Randolph	5A Fayette	5A Putnam	6A Chickasaw	5A Mills
4A Richland	4A Floyd	5A Randolph	5A Clarke	6A Mitchell
5A Rock Island	5A Fountain	4A Ripley	6A Clay	5A Monona
4A Saline	5A Franklin	5A Rush	6A Clayton	5A Monroe
5A Sangamon	5A Fulton	4A Scott	5A Clinton	5A Montgomery
5A Schuyler	4A Gibson	5A Shelby	5A Crawford	5A Muscatine
5A Scott	5A Grant	4A Spencer	5A Dallas	6A O'Brien
4A Shelby	4A Greene	5A Starke	5A Davis	6A Osceola
5A Stark	5A Hamilton	5A Steuben	5A Decatur	5A Page
4A St. Clair	5A Hancock	5A St. Joseph	6A Delaware	6A Palo Alto
5A Stephenson	4A Harrison	4A Sullivan	5A Des Moines	6A Plymouth
5A Tazewell	5A Hendricks	4A Switzerland	6A Dickinson	6A Pocahontas
4A Union	5A Henry	5A Tippecanoe	5A Dubuque	5A Polk
5A Vermilion	5A Howard	5A Tipton	6A Emmet	5A Pottawattamie
4A Wabash	5A Huntington	5A Union	6A Fayette	5A Poweshiek
5A Warren	4A Jackson	4A Vanderburgh	6A Floyd	5A Ringgold
4A Washington	5A Jasper	5A Vermillion	6A Franklin	6A Sac
4A Wayne	5A Jay	5A Vigo	5A Fremont	5A Scott
4A White	4A Jefferson	5A Wabash	5A Greene	5A Shelby
5A Whiteside	4A Jennings	5A Warren	6A Grundy	6A Sioux
5A Will	5A Johnson	4A Warrick	5A Guthrie	5A Story
4A Williamson	4A Knox	4A Washington	6A Hamilton	5A Tama
5A Winnebago	5A Kosciusko	5A Wayne	6A Hancock	5A Taylor
5A Woodford	5A LaGrange	5A Wells	6A Hardin	5A Union
<b>INDIANA</b>				
5A Adams	5A Lake	5A White	5A Harrison	5A Van Buren
5A Allen	5A LaPorte	5A Whitley	5A Henry	5A Wapello
5A Bartholomew	4A Lawrence	<b>IOWA</b>		5A Warren
5A Benton	5A Madison	5A Adair	6A Howard	5A Washington
5A Blackford	5A Marion	5A Adams	6A Humboldt	5A Wayne
	5A Marshall	5A Marshall	6A Ida	6A Webster
	4A Martin	6A Allamakee	5A Iowa	6A Winnebago
			5A Jackson	

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

6A Winneshiek	4A Haskell	4A Sedgwick	2A Iberville*	6A Cumberland
5A Woodbury	4A Hodgeman	4A Seward	3A Jackson*	6A Franklin
6A Worth	4A Jackson	4A Shawnee	2A Jefferson*	6A Hancock
6A Wright	4A Jefferson	5A Sheridan	2A Jefferson Davis*	6A Kennebec
<b>KANSAS</b>	5A Jewell	5A Sherman	2A Lafayette*	6A Knox
4A Allen	4A Johnson	5A Smith	2A Lafourche*	6A Lincoln
4A Anderson	4A Kearny	4A Stafford	3A La Salle*	6A Oxford
4A Atchison	4A Kingman	4A Stanton	3A Lincoln*	6A Penobscot
4A Barber	4A Kiowa	4A Stevens	2A Livingston*	6A Piscataquis
4A Barton	4A Labette	4A Sumner	3A Madison*	6A Sagadahoc
4A Bourbon	5A Lane	5A Thomas	3A Morehouse	6A Somerset
4A Brown	4A Leavenworth	5A Trego	3A Natchitoches*	6A Waldo
4A Butler	4A Lincoln	4A Wabaunsee	2A Orleans*	6A Washington
4A Chase	4A Linn	5A Wallace	3A Ouachita*	6A York
4A Chautauqua	5A Logan	4A Washington	2A Plaquemines*	<b>MARYLAND</b>
4A Cherokee	4A Lyon	5A Wichita	2A Pointe Coupee*	4A Allegany
5A Cheyenne	4A Marion	4A Wilson	2A Rapides*	4A Anne Arundel
4A Clark	4A Marshall	4A Woodson	3A Red River*	4A Baltimore
4A Clay	4A McPherson	4A Wyandotte	3A Richland*	4A Baltimore (city)
5A Cloud	4A Meade	<b>KENTUCKY</b>	3A Sabine*	4A Calvert
4A Coffey	4A Miami	4A (all)	2A St. Bernard*	4A Caroline
4A Comanche	5A Mitchell	<b>LOUISIANA</b>	2A St. Charles*	4A Carroll
4A Cowley	4A Montgomery	2A Acadia*	2A St. Helena*	4A Cecil
4A Crawford	4A Morris	2A Allen*	2A St. James*	4A Charles
5A Decatur	4A Morton	2A Ascension*	2A St. John the	4A Dorchester
4A Dickinson	4A Nemaha	2A Assumption*	Baptist*	4A Frederick
4A Doniphan	4A Neosho	2A Avoyelles*	2A St. Landry*	5A Garrett
4A Douglas	5A Ness	2A Beauregard*	2A St. Martin*	4A Harford
4A Edwards	5A Norton	3A Bienville*	2A St. Mary*	4A Howard
4A Elk	4A Osage	3A Bossier*	2A St. Tammany*	4A Kent
5A Ellis	5A Osborne	3A Caddo*	2A Tangipahoa*	4A Montgomery
4A Ellsworth	4A Ottawa	2A Calcasieu*	3A Tensas*	4A Prince George's
4A Finney	4A Pawnee	3A Caldwell*	2A Terrebonne*	4A Queen Anne's
4A Ford	5A Phillips	2A Cameron*	3A Union*	4A Somerset
4A Franklin	4A Pottawatomie	3A Catahoula*	2A Vermilion*	4A St. Mary's
4A Geary	4A Pratt	3A Claiborne*	3A Vernon*	4A Talbot
5A Gove	5A Rawlins	3A Concordia*	2A Washington*	4A Washington
5A Graham	4A Reno	3A De Soto*	3A Webster*	4A Wicomico
4A Grant	5A Republic	2A East Baton Rouge*	2A West Baton	4A Worcester
4A Gray	4A Rice	3A East Carroll	Rouge*	<b>MASSACHSETTS</b>
5A Greeley	4A Riley	2A East Feliciana*	3A West Carroll	5A (all)
4A Greenwood	5A Rooks	2A Evangeline*	2A West Feliciana*	<b>MICHIGAN</b>
5A Hamilton	4A Rush	3A Franklin*	3A Winn*	6A Alcona
4A Harper	4A Russell	3A Grant*	<b>MAINE</b>	6A Alger
4A Harvey	4A Saline	2A Iberia*	6A Androscoggin	
	5A Scott		7 Aroostook	

(continued)

**TABLE C301.1—continued**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

5A Allegan	7 Mackinac	6A Carver	7 Otter Tail	3A Clarke
6A Alpena	5A Macomb	7 Cass	7 Pennington	3A Clay
6A Antrim	6A Manistee	6A Chippewa	7 Pine	3A Coahoma
6A Arenac	6A Marquette	6A Chisago	6A Pipestone	3A Copiah*
7 Baraga	6A Mason	7 Clay	7 Polk	3A Covington*
5A Barry	6A Mecosta	7 Clearwater	6A Pope	3A DeSoto
5A Bay	6A Menominee	7 Cook	6A Ramsey	3A Forrest*
6A Benzie	5A Midland	6A Cottonwood	7 Red Lake	3A Franklin*
5A Berrien	6A Missaukee	7 Crow Wing	6A Redwood	3A George*
5A Branch	5A Monroe	6A Dakota	6A Renville	3A Greene*
5A Calhoun	5A Montcalm	6A Dodge	6A Rice	3A Grenada
5A Cass	6A Montmorency	6A Douglas	6A Rock	2A Hancock*
6A Charlevoix	5A Muskegon	6A Faribault	7 Roseau	2A Harrison*
6A Cheboygan	6A Newaygo	6A Fillmore	6A Scott	3A Hinds*
7 Chippewa	5A Oakland	6A Freeborn	6A Sherburne	3A Holmes
6A Clare	6A Oceana	6A Goodhue	6A Sibley	3A Humphreys
5A Clinton	6A Ogemaw	7 Grant	6A Stearns	3A Issaquena
6A Crawford	7 Ontonagon	6A Hennepin	6A Steele	3A Itawamba
6A Delta	6A Osceola	6A Houston	6A Stevens	2A Jackson*
6A Dickinson	6A Oscoda	7 Hubbard	7 St. Louis	3A Jasper
5A Eaton	6A Otsego	6A Isanti	6A Swift	3A Jefferson*
6A Emmet	5A Ottawa	7 Itasca	6A Todd	3A Jefferson Davis*
5A Genesee	6A Presque Isle	6A Jackson	6A Traverse	3A Jones*
6A Gladwin	6A Roscommon	7 Kanabec	6A Wabasha	3A Kemper
7 Gogebic	5A Saginaw	6A Kandiyohi	7 Wadena	3A Lafayette
6A Grand Traverse	6A Sanilac	7 Kittson	6A Waseca	3A Lamar*
5A Gratiot	7 Schoolcraft	7 Koochiching	6A Washington	3A Lauderdale
5A Hillsdale	5A Shiawassee	6A Lac qui Parle	6A Watonwan	3A Lawrence*
7 Houghton	5A St. Clair	7 Lake	7 Wilkin	3A Leake
6A Huron	5A St. Joseph	7 Lake of the Woods	6A Winona	3A Lee
5A Ingham	5A Tuscola	6A Le Sueur	6A Wright	3A Leflore
5A Ionia	5A Van Buren	6A Lincoln	6A Yellow	3A Lincoln*
6A Iosco	5A Washtenaw	6A Lyon	Medicine	3A Lowndes
7 Iron	5A Wayne	7 Mahnomen		3A Madison
6A Isabella	6A Wexford	7 Marshall		3A Marion*
5A Jackson		6A Martin		3A Marshall
5A Kalamazoo		6A McLeod		3A Monroe
6A Kalkaska	7 Aitkin	6A Meeker		3A Montgomery
5A Kent	6A Anoka	7 Mille Lacs		3A Neshoba
7 Keweenaw	7 Becker	6A Morrison		3A Newton
6A Lake	7 Beltrami	6A Mower		3A Noxubee
5A Lapeer	6A Benton	6A Murray		3A Oktibbeha
6A Leelanau	6A Big Stone	6A Nicollet		3A Panola
5A Lenawee	6A Blue Earth	6A Nobles		2A Pearl River*
5A Livingston	6A Brown	7 Norman		3A Perry*
7 Luce	7 Carlton	6A Olmsted		3A Pike*

*(continued)*

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

3A Pontotoc	5A Chariton	4A Mississippi	4A Webster	4A Cumberland
3A Prentiss	4A Christian	4A Moniteau	5A Worth	4A Essex
3A Quitman	5A Clark	4A Monroe	4A Wright	4A Gloucester
3A Rankin*	4A Clay	4A Montgomery	<b>MONTANA</b>	4A Hudson
3A Scott	5A Clinton	4A Morgan	6B (all)	5A Hunterdon
3A Sharkey	4A Cole	4A New Madrid	<b>NEBRASKA</b>	5A Mercer
3A Simpson*	4A Cooper	4A Newton		4A Middlesex
3A Smith*	4A Crawford	5A Nodaway	5A (all)	4A Monmouth
2A Stone*	4A Dade	4A Oregon	<b>NEVADA</b>	5A Morris
3A Sunflower	4A Dallas	4A Osage		4A Ocean
3A Tallahatchie	5A Daviess	4A Ozark	5B Carson City (city)	5A Passaic
3A Tate	5A DeKalb	4A Pemiscot	5B Churchill	4A Salem
3A Tippah	4A Dent	4A Perry	3B Clark	5A Somerset
3A Tishomingo	4A Douglas	4A Pettis	5B Douglas	5A Sussex
3A Tunica	4A Dunklin	4A Phelps	5B Elko	4A Union
3A Union	4A Franklin	5A Pike	5B Esmeralda	5A Warren
3A Walthall*	4A Gasconade	4A Platte	5B Eureka	<b>NEW MEXICO</b>
3A Warren*	5A Gentry	4A Polk	5B Humboldt	4B Bernalillo
3A Washington	4A Greene	4A Pulaski	5B Lander	5B Catron
3A Wayne*	5A Grundy	5A Putnam	5B Lincoln	3B Chaves
3A Webster	5A Harrison	5A Ralls	5B Lyon	4B Cibola
3A Wilkinson*	4A Henry	4A Randolph	5B Mineral	5B Colfax
3A Winston	4A Hickory	4A Ray	5B Nye	4B Curry
3A Yalobusha	5A Holt	4A Reynolds	5B Pershing	4B DeBaca
3A Yazoo	4A Howard	4A Ripley	5B Storey	3B Doña Ana
<b>MISSOURI</b>	4A Howell	4A Saline	5B Washoe	3B Eddy
5A Adair	4A Iron	5A Schuyler	5B White Pine	4B Grant
5A Andrew	4A Jackson	5A Scotland	<b>NEW HAMPSHIRE</b>	4B Guadalupe
5A Atchison	4A Jasper	4A Scott	6A Belknap	5B Harding
4A Audrain	4A Jefferson	4A Shannon	6A Carroll	3B Hidalgo
4A Barry	4A Johnson	5A Shelby	5A Cheshire	3B Lea
4A Barton	5A Knox	4A St. Charles	6A Coos	4B Lincoln
4A Bates	4A Laclede	4A St. Clair	6A Grafton	5B Los Alamos
4A Benton	4A Lafayette	4A St. Francois	5A Hillsborough	3B Luna
4A Bollinger	4A Lawrence	4A St. Louis	6A Merrimack	5B McKinley
4A Boone	5A Lewis	4A St. Louis (city)	5A Rockingham	5B Mora
5A Buchanan	4A Lincoln	4A Ste. Genevieve	5A Strafford	3B Otero
4A Butler	5A Linn	4A Stoddard	6A Sullivan	4B Quay
5A Caldwell	5A Livingston	4A Stone	<b>NEW JERSEY</b>	5B Rio Arriba
4A Callaway	5A Macon	5A Sullivan	4A Atlantic	4B Roosevelt
4A Camden	4A Madison	4A Taney	5A Bergen	5B Sandoval
4A Cape Girardeau	4A Maries	4A Texas	4A Burlington	5B San Juan
4A Carroll	5A Marion	4A Vernon	4A Camden	5B San Miguel
4A Carter	4A McDonald	4A Warren	4A Cape May	5B Santa Fe
4A Cass	5A Mercer	4A Washington		4B Sierra
4A Cedar	4A Miller	4A Wayne		4B Socorro

(continued)

**TABLE C301.1—continued**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

5B Taos	4A Queens	4A Clay	4A Orange	7 Divide
5B Torrance	5A Rensselaer	4A Cleveland	3A Pamlico	6A Dunn
4B Union	4A Richmond	3A Columbus*	3A Pasquotank	7 Eddy
4B Valencia	5A Rockland	3A Craven	3A Pender*	6A Emmons
<b>NEW YORK</b>	<b>5A Saratoga</b>	<b>3A Cumberland</b>	<b>3A Perquimans</b>	<b>7 Foster</b>
5A Albany	5A Schenectady	3A Currituck	4A Person	6A Golden Valley
6A Allegany	6A Schoharie	3A Dare	3A Pitt	7 Grand Forks
4A Bronx	6A Schuyler	3A Davidson	4A Polk	6A Grant
6A Broome	5A Seneca	4A Davie	3A Randolph	7 Griggs
6A Cattaraugus	6A Steuben	3A Duplin	3A Richmond	6A Hettinger
5A Cayuga	6A St. Lawrence	4A Durham	3A Robeson	7 Kidder
5A Chautauqua	4A Suffolk	3A Edgecombe	4A Rockingham	6A LaMoure
5A Chemung	6A Sullivan	4A Forsyth	3A Rowan	6A Logan
6A Chenango	5A Tioga	4A Franklin	4A Rutherford	7 McHenry
6A Clinton	6A Tompkins	3A Gaston	3A Sampson	6A McIntosh
5A Columbia	6A Ulster	4A Gates	3A Scotland	6A McKenzie
5A Cortland	6A Warren	4A Graham	3A Stanly	7 McLean
6A Delaware	5A Washington	4A Granville	4A Stokes	6A Mercer
5A Dutchess	5A Wayne	3A Greene	4A Surry	6A Morton
5A Erie	4A Westchester	4A Guilford	4A Swain	7 Mountrail
6A Essex	6A Wyoming	4A Halifax	4A Transylvania	7 Nelson
6A Franklin	5A Yates	4A Harnett	3A Tyrrell	6A Oliver
6A Fulton	<b>NORTH</b>	4A Haywood	3A Union	7 Pembina
5A Genesee	<b>CAROLINA</b>	4A Henderson	4A Vance	7 Pierce
5A Greene	4A Alamance	4A Hertford	4A Wake	7 Ramsey
6A Hamilton	4A Alexander	3A Hoke	4A Warren	6A Ransom
6A Herkimer	5A Alleghany	3A Hyde	3A Washington	7 Renville
6A Jefferson	3A Anson	4A Iredell	5A Watauga	6A Richland
4A Kings	5A Ashe	4A Jackson	3A Wayne	7 Rolette
6A Lewis	5A Avery	3A Johnston	4A Wilkes	6A Sargent
5A Livingston	3A Beaufort	3A Jones	3A Wilson	7 Sheridan
6A Madison	4A Bertie	4A Lee	4A Yadkin	6A Sioux
5A Monroe	3A Bladen	3A Lenoir	5A Yancey	6A Slope
6A Montgomery	3A Brunswick*	4A Lincoln	<b>NORTH DAKOTA</b>	6A Stark
4A Nassau	4A Buncombe	4A Macon	6A Adams	7 Steele
4A New York	4A Burke	4A Madison	7 Barnes	7 Stutsman
5A Niagara	3A Cabarrus	3A Martin	7 Benson	7 Towner
6A Oneida	4A Caldwell	4A McDowell	6A Billings	7 Traill
5A Onondaga	3A Camden	3A Mecklenburg	7 Bottineau	7 Walsh
5A Ontario	3A Carteret*	5A Mitchell	6A Bowman	7 Ward
5A Orange	4A Caswell	3A Montgomery	7 Burke	7 Wells
5A Orleans	4A Catawba	3A Moore	6A Burleigh	7 Williams
5A Oswego	4A Chatham	4A Nash	7 Cass	<b>OHIO</b>
6A Otsego	4A Cherokee	3A New Hanover*	7 Cavalier	4A Adams
5A Putnam	3A Chowan	4A Northampton	6A Dickey	5A Allen
		3A Onslow*		

*(continued)*

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A Ashland	5A Mahoning	3A Bryan	3A Okfuskee	4C Linn
5A Ashtabula	5A Marion	3A Caddo	3A Oklahoma	5B Malheur
5A Athens	5A Medina	3A Canadian	3A Okmulgee	4C Marion
5A Auglaize	5A Meigs	3A Carter	3A Osage	5B Morrow
5A Belmont	5A Mercer	3A Cherokee	3A Ottawa	4C Multnomah
4A Brown	5A Miami	3A Choctaw	3A Pawnee	4C Polk
5A Butler	5A Monroe	4B Cimarron	3A Payne	5B Sherman
5A Carroll	5A Montgomery	3A Cleveland	3A Pittsburg	4C Tillamook
5A Champaign	5A Morgan	3A Coal	3A Pontotoc	5B Umatilla
5A Clark	5A Morrow	3A Comanche	3A Pottawatomie	5B Union
4A Clermont	5A Muskingum	3A Cotton	3A Pushmataha	5B Wallowa
5A Clinton	5A Noble	3A Craig	3A Roger Mills	5B Wasco
5A Columbiana	5A Ottawa	3A Creek	3A Rogers	4C Washington
5A Coshocton	5A Paulding	3A Custer	3A Seminole	5B Wheeler
5A Crawford	5A Perry	3A Delaware	3A Sequoyah	4C Yamhill
5A Cuyahoga	5A Pickaway	3A Dewey	3A Stephens	<b>PENNSYLVANIA</b>
5A Darke	4A Pike	3A Ellis	4B Texas	5A Adams
5A Defiance	5A Portage	3A Garfield	3A Tillman	5A Allegheny
5A Delaware	5A Preble	3A Garvin	3A Tulsa	5A Armstrong
5A Erie	5A Putnam	3A Grady	3A Wagoner	5A Beaver
5A Fairfield	5A Richland	3A Grant	3A Washington	5A Beaver
5A Fayette	5A Ross	3A Greer	3A Washita	5A Bedford
5A Franklin	5A Sandusky	3A Harmon	3A Woods	5A Berks
5A Fulton	4A Scioto	3A Harper	3A Woodward	5A Blair
4A Gallia	5A Seneca	3A Haskell	<b>OREGON</b>	5A Bradford
5A Geauga	5A Shelby	3A Hughes	5B Baker	4A Bucks
5A Greene	5A Stark	3A Jackson	4C Benton	5A Butler
5A Guernsey	5A Summit	3A Jefferson	4C Clackamas	5A Cambria
4A Hamilton	5A Trumbull	3A Johnston	4C Clatsop	6A Cameron
5A Hancock	5A Tuscarawas	3A Kay	4C Columbia	5A Carbon
5A Hardin	5A Union	3A Kingfisher	4C Coos	5A Centre
5A Harrison	5A Van Wert	3A Kiowa	5B Crook	4A Chester
5A Henry	5A Vinton	3A Latimer	4C Curry	5A Clarion
5A Highland	5A Warren	3A Le Flore	5B Deschutes	6A Clearfield
5A Hocking	4A Washington	3A Lincoln	4C Douglas	5A Clinton
5A Holmes	5A Wayne	3A Logan	5B Gilliam	5A Columbia
5A Huron	5A Williams	3A Love	5B Grant	5A Crawford
5A Jackson	5A Wood	3A Major	5B Harney	5A Cumberland
5A Jefferson	5A Wyandot	3A Marshall	5B Hood River	5A Dauphin
5A Knox	<b>OKLAHOMA</b>			4A Delaware
5A Lake	3A Adair	3A Mayes	4C Jackson	6A Elk
4A Lawrence	3A Alfalfa	3A McClain	5B Jefferson	5A Erie
5A Licking	3A Atoka	3A McCurtain	4C Josephine	5A Fayette
5A Logan	4B Beaver	3A McIntosh	5B Klamath	5A Forest
5A Lorain	3A Beckham	3A Murray	5B Lake	5A Franklin
5A Lucas	3A Blaine	3A Muskogee	4C Lane	5A Fulton
5A Madison		3A Noble	4C Lincoln	5A Greene
		3A Nowata		

(continued)

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A Huntingdon	3A Bamberg*	5A Bennett	6A Minnehaha	4A Gibson
5A Indiana	3A Barnwell*	5A Bon Homme	6A Moody	4A Giles
5A Jefferson	3A Beaufort*	6A Brookings	6A Pennington	4A Grainger
5A Juniata	3A Berkeley*	6A Brown	6A Perkins	4A Greene
5A Lackawanna	3A Calhoun	6A Brule	6A Potter	4A Grundy
5A Lancaster	3A Charleston*	6A Buffalo	6A Roberts	4A Hamblen
5A Lawrence	3A Cherokee	6A Butte	6A Sanborn	4A Hamilton
5A Lebanon	3A Chester	6A Campbell	6A Shannon	4A Hancock
5A Lehigh	3A Chesterfield	5A Charles Mix	6A Spink	3A Hardeman
5A Luzerne	3A Clarendon	6A Clark	6A Stanley	3A Hardin
5A Lycoming	3A Colleton*	5A Clay	6A Sully	4A Hawkins
6A McKean	3A Darlington	6A Codington	5A Todd	3A Haywood
5A Mercer	3A Dillon	6A Corson	5A Tripp	3A Henderson
5A Mifflin	3A Dorchester*	6A Custer	6A Turner	4A Henry
5A Monroe	3A Edgefield	6A Davison	5A Union	4A Hickman
4A Montgomery	3A Fairfield	6A Day	6A Walworth	4A Houston
5A Montour	3A Florence	6A Deuel	5A Yankton	4A Humphreys
5A Northampton	3A Georgetown*	6A Dewey	6A Ziebach	4A Jackson
5A Northumberland	3A Greenville	5A Douglas		4A Jefferson
5A Perry	3A Greenwood	6A Edmunds		4A Johnson
4A Philadelphia	3A Hampton*	6A Fall River		4A Knox
5A Pike	3A Horry*	6A Faulk		3A Lake
6A Potter	3A Jasper*	6A Grant		3A Lauderdale
5A Schuylkill	3A Kershaw	5A Gregory		4A Lawrence
5A Snyder	3A Lancaster	6A Haakon		4A Lewis
5A Somerset	3A Laurens	6A Hamlin		4A Lincoln
5A Sullivan	3A Lee	6A Hand		4A Loudon
6A Susquehanna	3A Lexington	6A Hanson		4A Macon
6A Tioga	3A Marion	6A Harding		3A Madison
5A Union	3A Marlboro	6A Hughes		4A Marion
5A Venango	3A McCormick	5A Hutchinson		4A Marshall
5A Warren	3A Newberry	6A Hyde		4A Maury
5A Washington	3A Oconee	5A Jackson		4A McMinn
6A Wayne	3A Orangeburg	6A Jerauld		3A McNairy
5A Westmoreland	3A Pickens	6A Jones		4A Meigs
5A Wyoming	3A Richland	6A Kingsbury		4A Monroe
4A York	3A Saluda	6A Lake		4A Montgomery
<b>RHODE ISLAND</b>	3A Spartanburg	6A Lawrence		4A Moore
5A (all)	3A Sumter	6A Lincoln		4A Morgan
<b>SOUTH</b> <b>CAROLINA</b>	3A Union	6A Lyman		4A Obion
3A Abbeville	3A Williamsburg	6A Marshall		4A Overton
3A Aiken	3A York	6A McCook		4A Perry
3A Allendale*		6A McPherson		4A Pickett
3A Anderson	6A Aurora	6A Meade		4A Polk
	6A Beadle	5A Mellette		4A Putnam
		6A Miner		4A Rhea

(continued)

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

4A Roane	3B Brewster	3B Ector	3B Howard	3B McCulloch
4A Robertson	4B Briscoe	2B Edwards	3B Hudspeth	2A McLennan*
4A Rutherford	2A Brooks*	3A Ellis*	3A Hunt*	2A McMullen*
4A Scott	3A Brown*	3B El Paso	4B Hutchinson	2B Medina
4A Sequatchie	2A Burleson*	3A Erath*	3B Irion	3B Menard
4A Sevier	3A Burnet*	2A Falls*	3A Jack	3B Midland
3A Shelby	2A Caldwell*	3A Fannin	2A Jackson*	2A Milam*
4A Smith	2A Calhoun*	2A Fayette*	2A Jasper*	3A Mills*
4A Stewart	3B Callahan	3B Fisher	3B Jeff Davis	3B Mitchell
4A Sullivan	2A Cameron*	4B Floyd	2A Jefferson*	3A Montague
4A Sumner	3A Camp*	3B Foard	2A Jim Hogg*	2A Montgomery*
3A Tipton	4B Carson	2A Fort Bend*	2A Jim Wells*	4B Moore
4A Trousdale	3A Cass*	3A Franklin*	3A Johnson*	3A Morris*
4A Unicoi	4B Castro	2A Freestone*	3B Jones	3B Motley
4A Union	2A Chambers*	2B Frio	2A Karnes*	3A Nacogdoches*
4A Van Buren	2A Cherokee*	3B Gaines	3A Kaufman*	3A Navarro*
4A Warren	3B Childress	2A Galveston*	3A Kendall*	2A Newton*
4A Washington	3A Clay	3B Garza	2A Kenedy*	3B Nolan
4A Wayne	4B Cochran	3A Gillespie*	3B Kent	2A Nueces*
4A Weakley	3B Coke	3B Glasscock	3B Kerr	4B Ochiltree
4A White	3B Coleman	2A Goliad*	3B Kimble	4B Oldham
4A Williamson	3A Collin*	2A Gonzales*	3B King	2A Orange*
4A Wilson	3B Collingsworth	4B Gray	2B Kinney	3A Palo Pinto*
<b>TEXAS</b>				
2A Anderson*	2A Colorado*	3A Grayson	2A Kleberg*	3A Panola*
3B Andrews	2A Comal*	3A Gregg*	3B Knox	3A Parker*
2A Angelina*	3A Comanche*	2A Grimes*	3A Lamar*	4B Parmer
2A Aransas*	3B Concho	2A Guadalupe*	4B Lamb	3B Pecos
3A Archer	3A Cooke	4B Hale	3A Lampasas*	2A Polk*
4B Armstrong	2A Coryell*	3B Hall	2B La Salle	4B Potter
2A Atascosa*	3B Cottle	3A Hamilton*	2A Lavaca*	3B Presidio
2A Austin*	3B Crane	4B Hansford	2A Lee*	3A Rains*
2A Bailey	3B Crockett	3B Hardeman	2A Leon*	4B Randall
4B Bailey	3B Crosby	2A Hardin*	2A Liberty*	3B Reagan
2B Bandera	3B Culberson	2A Harris*	2A Limestone*	2B Real
2A Bastrop*	4B Dallam	3A Harrison*	4B Lipscomb	3A Red River*
3B Baylor	3A Dallas*	4B Hartley	2A Live Oak*	3B Reeves
2A Bee*	3B Dawson	3B Haskell	3A Llano*	2A Refugio*
2A Bell*	4B Deaf Smith	2A Hays*	3B Loving	4B Roberts
2A Bexar*	3A Delta	3B Hemphill	3B Lubbock	2A Robertson*
3A Blanco*	3A Denton*	3A Henderson*	3B Lynn	3A Rockwall*
3B Borden	2A DeWitt*	2A Hidalgo*	2A Madison*	3B Runnels
2A Bosque*	3B Dickens	2A Hill*	3A Marion*	3A Rusk*
3A Bowie*	2B Dimmit	4B Hockley	3B Martin	3A Sabine*
2A Brazoria*	4B Donley	3A Hood*	3B Mason	3A San Augustine*
2A Brazoria*	2A Duval*	3A Hopkins*	2A Matagorda*	2A San Jacinto*
2A Brazos*	3A Eastland	2A Houston*	2B Maverick	2A San Patricio*

(continued)

TABLE C301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

				WISCONSIN
3A San Saba*	3A Young	4C Clark	4A Gilmer	6A Adams
3B Schleicher	2B Zapata	5B Columbia	5A Grant	7 Ashland
3B Scurry	2B Zavala	4C Cowlitz	5A Greenbrier	6A Barron
3B Shackelford		5B Douglas	5A Hampshire	7 Bayfield
3A Shelby*		6B Ferry	5A Hancock	6A Brown
4B Sherman	5B Beaver	5B Franklin	5A Hardy	6A Buffalo
3A Smith*	6B Box Elder	5B Garfield	5A Harrison	7 Burnett
3A Somervell*	6B Cache	5B Grant	4A Jackson	6A Calumet
2A Starr*	6B Carbon	4C Grays Harbor	4A Jefferson	6A Chippewa
3A Stephens	6B Daggett	4C Island	4A Kanawha	6A Clark
3B Sterling	5B Davis	4C Jefferson	5A Lewis	6A Columbia
3B Stonewall	6B Duchesne	4C King	4A Lincoln	6A Crawford
3B Sutton	5B Emery	4C Kitsap	4A Logan	6A Dane
4B Swisher	5B Garfield	5B Kittitas	5A Marion	6A Dodge
3A Tarrant*	5B Grand	5B Klickitat	5A Marshall	6A Door
3B Taylor	5B Iron	4C Lewis	4A Mason	7 Douglas
3B Terrell	5B Juab	5B Lincoln	4A McDowell	6A Dunn
3B Terry	5B Kane	4C Mason	4A Mercer	6A Eau Claire
3B Throckmorton	5B Millard	6B Okanogan	5A Mineral	7 Florence
3A Titus*	6B Morgan	4C Pacific	4A Mingo	6A Fond du Lac
3B Tom Green	5B Piute	6B Pend Oreille	5A Monongalia	7 Forest
2A Travis*	6B Rich	4C Pierce	4A Monroe	6A Grant
2A Trinity*	5B Salt Lake	4C San Juan	4A Morgan	6A Green
2A Tyler*	5B San Juan	4C Skagit	5A Nicholas	6A Green Lake
3A Upshur*	5B Sanpete	5B Skamania	5A Ohio	6A Iowa
3B Upton	5B Sevier	4C Snohomish	5A Pendleton	7 Iron
2B Uvalde	6B Summit	5B Spokane	4A Pleasants	6A Jackson
2B Val Verde	5B Tooele	6B Stevens	5A Pocahontas	6A Jefferson
3A Van Zandt*	6B Uintah	4C Thurston	5A Preston	6A Juneau
2A Victoria*	5B Utah	4C Wahkiakum	4A Putnam	6A Kenosha
2A Walker*	6B Wasatch	5B Walla Walla	5A Raleigh	6A Kewaunee
2A Waller*	3B Washington	4C Whatcom	5A Randolph	6A La Crosse
3B Ward	5B Wayne	5B Whitman	4A Ritchie	6A Lafayette
2A Washington*	5B Weber	5B Yakima	4A Roane	7 Langlade
2B Webb			5A Summers	7 Lincoln
2A Wharton*	6A (all)		5A Taylor	6A Manitowoc
3B Wheeler		5A Barbour	5A Tucker	6A Marathon
3A Wichita		4A Berkeley	4A Tyler	6A Marinette
3B Wilbarger	4A (all)	4A Boone	5A Upshur	6A Marquette
2A Willacy*		4A Braxton	4A Wayne	6A Menominee
2A Williamson*		5A Brooke	5A Webster	6A Milwaukee
2A Wilson*	5B Adams	4A Cabell	5A Wetzel	6A Monroe
3B Winkler	5B Asotin	4A Calhoun	4A Wirt	6A Oconto
3A Wise	5B Benton	4A Clay	4A Wood	7 Oneida
3A Wood*	5B Chelan	5A Doddridge	4A Wyoming	6A Outagamie
4B Yoakum	4C Clallam	5A Fayette		

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE C301.1—continued**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

6A Ozaukee	7 Taylor	6B Big Horn	6B Sheridan	<b>NORTHERN</b>
6A Pepin	6A Trempealeau	6B Campbell	7 Sublette	<b>MARIANA</b>
6A Pierce	6A Vernon	6B Carbon	6B Sweetwater	<b>ISLANDS</b>
6A Polk	7 Vilas	6B Converse	7 Teton	1A (all)*
6A Portage	6A Walworth	6B Crook	6B Uinta	<b>PUERTO RICO</b>
7 Price	7 Washburn	6B Fremont	6B Washakie	1A (all)*
6A Racine	6A Washington	5B Goshen	6B Weston	<b>VIRGIN ISLANDS</b>
6A Richland	6A Waukesha	6B Hot Springs	<b>US TERRITORIES</b>	
6A Rock	6A Waupaca	6B Johnson	<b>AMERICAN</b>	
6A Rusk	6A Waushara	6B Laramie	<b>SAMOA</b>	
6A Sauk	6A Winnebago	7 Lincoln	<b>GUAM</b>	
7 Sawyer	6A Wood	6B Natrona	1A (all)*	
6A Shawano	<b>WYOMING</b>		6B Niobrara	
6A Sheboygan	6B Albany	6B Park		
6A St. Croix		5B Platte	1A (all)*	

**TABLE C301.3(1)**  
**INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS**

MAJOR CLIMATE TYPE DEFINITIONS	
Marine (C) Definition—Locations meeting all four criteria:	
1. Mean temperature of coldest month between $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $27^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and $18^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $65^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
2. Warmest month mean $< 22^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $72^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
3. At least four months with mean temperatures over $10^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $50^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.	
Dry (B) Definition—Locations meeting the following criteria:	
Not marine and $P_{in} < 0.44 \times (TF - 19.5)$ $[P_{cm} < 2.0 \times (TC + 7)$ in SI units]	
where:	
$P_{in}$ = Annual precipitation in inches (cm)	
$T$ = Annual mean temperature in $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ )	
Moist (A) Definition—Locations that are not marine and not dry.	
Warm-humid Definition—Moist (A) locations where either of the following wet-bulb temperature conditions shall occur during the warmest six consecutive months of the year:	
1. $67^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $19.4^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or higher for 3,000 or more hours; or	
2. $73^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $22.8^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or higher for 1,500 or more hours.	

For SI:  $^{\circ}\text{C} = [({}^{\circ}\text{F}) - 32]/1.8$ , 1 inch = 2.54 cm.

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE C301.3(2)**  
**INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS**

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP UNITS	SI UNITS
1	9000 < CDD50°F	5000 < CDD10°C
2	6300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3A and 3B	4500 < CDD50°F ≤ 6300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2500 < CDD10°C ≤ 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
4A and 4B	CDD50°F ≤ 4500 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	CDD10°C ≤ 2500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
3C	HDD65°F ≤ 3600	HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4C	3600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	5400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7200	3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

## SECTION C302 DESIGN CONDITIONS

**C302.1 Interior design conditions.** The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

## SECTION C303 MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

**C303.1 Identification.** Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

**C303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation.** An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be *listed* on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and *R*-value of installed thickness shall be *listed* on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be labeled on the product's package and shall be *listed* on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

**Exception:** For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code*.

**C303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation.** The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof/ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers and one or more of such markers shall be installed for every 300 square feet (28 m<sup>2</sup>) of attic area throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic *access* opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be *listed* on certification provided by the insulation installer.

**C303.1.2 Insulation mark installation.** Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

**C303.1.3 Fenestration product rating.** *U*-factors of fenestration products shall be determined as follows:

1. For windows, doors and skylights, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
2. Where required for garage doors and rolling doors, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

*U*-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a *labeled* *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table C303.1.3(1) or C303.1.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table C303.1.3(3).

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE C303.1.3(1)**  
**DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW,  
 GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT U-FACTORS**

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single	Double	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block		0.60		

**TABLE C303.1.3(2)**  
**DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR U-FACTORS**

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE U-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal (Rolling)	0.90
Insulated Metal (Other)	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

**TABLE C303.1.3(3)**  
**DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT**

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

**C303.1.4 Insulation product rating.** The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the U.S. Federal Trade Commission *R*-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of  $\text{h} \cdot \text{ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F/Btu}$  at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

**C303.1.4.1 Insulated siding.** The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**C303.2 Installation.** Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code*.

**C303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation.** Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

**C303.2.2 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board.** Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with

Section C303.2. Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer's instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.



## CHAPTER 4 [CE]

# COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 4 presents the paths and options for compliance with the energy efficiency provisions. Chapter 4 contains energy efficiency provisions for the building envelope, fenestration, mechanical systems, appliances, freezers and coolers, kitchen exhaust, interior and exterior lighting, water heating systems, transformers and motors.

## SECTION C401 GENERAL

**C401.1 Scope.** The provisions in this chapter are applicable to commercial *buildings* and their *building sites*.

**C401.2 Application.** Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:

1. The requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. The requirements of Sections C402 through C405 and C408. In addition, commercial buildings shall comply with Section C406 and tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.1.1.
3. The requirements of Sections C402.5, C403.2, C403.3 through C403.3.2, C403.4 through C403.4.2.3, C403.5.5, C403.7, C403.8.1 through C403.8.4, C403.10.1 through C403.10.3, C403.11, C403.12, C404, C405, C407 and C408. The building energy cost shall be equal to or less than 85 percent of the standard reference design building.

**C401.2.1 Application to replacement fenestration products.** Where some or all of an existing *fenestration* unit is replaced with a new *fenestration* product, including sash and glazing, the replacement *fenestration* unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U-factor* and *SHGC* in Table C402.4.

**Exception:** An area-weighted average of the *U-factor* of replacement *fenestration* products being installed in the building for each *fenestration* product category listed in Table C402.4 shall be permitted to satisfy the *U-factor* requirements for each *fenestration* product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual *fenestration* products from different product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating the area-weighted average *U-factor*.

## SECTION C402 BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

**C402.1 General (Prescriptive).** Building thermal envelope assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis in accordance with the compliance path described in Item 2 of Section C401.2, shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the building thermal envelope shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of Section C402.2 and the thermal requirements of either the

*R*-value-based method of Section C402.1.3; the *U*-, *C*- and *F*-factor-based method of Section C402.1.4; or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.

2. Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance shall comply with Section C402.3.
3. Fenestration in building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.4.
4. Air leakage of building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.5.

Alternatively, where buildings have a vertical *fenestration* area or *skylight* area exceeding that allowed in Section C402.4, the building and building thermal envelope shall comply with Section C401.2, Item 1 or Section C401.2, Item 3.

Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C403.10.1 or C403.10.2.

**C402.1.1 Low-energy buildings.** The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section, shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section C402.

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h • ft<sup>2</sup> (10.7 W/m<sup>2</sup>) or 1.0 watt per square foot (10.7 W/m<sup>2</sup>) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.
3. Greenhouses.

**C402.1.2 Equipment buildings.** Buildings that comply with the following shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area not more than 500 square feet (50 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. Are intended to house electronic equipment with installed equipment power totaling not less than 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m<sup>2</sup>) and not intended for human occupancy.
3. Have a heating system capacity not greater than (17,000 Btu/h) (5 kW) and a heating thermostat set-point that is restricted to not more than 50°F (10°C).
4. Have an average wall and roof *U-factor* less than 0.200 in *Climate Zones* 1 through 5 and less than 0.120 in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.
5. Comply with the roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance provisions for *Climate Zone* 1.

**C402.1.3 Insulation component *R*-value-based method.** Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall comply with the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3. For opaque portions of the building thermal envelope intended to comply on an insulation component *R*-value basis, the *R*-values for insulation shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *R*-values from the “*Group R*” column of Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *R*-values from the “All other” column of Table C402.1.3.

**C402.1.4 Assembly *U*-factor, *C*-factor or *F*-factor-based method.** Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall meet the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3. Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies intended to comply on an assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor basis shall have a *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor not greater than that specified in Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the “*Group R*” column of Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the “All other” column of Table C402.1.4.

**C402.1.4.1 Thermal resistance of cold-formed steel walls.** *U*-factors of walls with cold-formed steel studs shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1:

$$U = 1/[R_s + (ER)] \quad (\text{Equation 4-1})$$

where:

$R_s$  = The cumulative *R*-value of the wall components along the path of heat transfer, excluding the *cavity insulation* and steel studs.

$ER$  = The effective *R*-value of the *cavity insulation* with steel studs as specified in Table C402.1.4.1.

**C402.1.5 Component performance alternative.** Building envelope values and fenestration areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-2 shall be an alternative to compliance with the *U*-, *F*- and *C*-factors in Tables

C402.1.4 and C402.4 and the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1. *Fenestration* shall meet the applicable SHGC requirements of Section C402.4.3.

$$A + B + C + D + E \leq \text{Zero} \quad (\text{Equation 4-2})$$

where:

$A$  = Sum of the (UA Dif) values for each distinct assembly type of the building thermal envelope, other than slabs on grade and below-grade walls.

UA Dif = UA Proposed - UA Table.

UA Proposed = Proposed *U*-value  $\times$  Area.

UA Table = (*U*-factor from Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4 or C402.4  $\times$  Area.)

$B$  = Sum of the (FL Dif) values for each distinct slab-on-grade perimeter condition of the building thermal envelope.

FL Dif = FL Proposed - FL Table.

FL Proposed = Proposed *F*-value  $\times$  Perimeter length.

FL Table = (*F*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4)  $\times$  Perimeter length.

$C$  = Sum of the (CA Dif) values for each distinct below-grade wall assembly type of the building thermal envelope.

CA Dif = CA Proposed - CA Table.

CA Proposed = Proposed *C*-value  $\times$  Area.

CA Table = (Maximum allowable *C*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4)  $\times$  Area.

Where the proposed vertical glazing area is less than or equal to the maximum vertical glazing area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of  $D$  (Excess Vertical Glazing Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

$D$  =  $(DA \times UV) - (DA \times U_{\text{Wall}})$ , but not less than zero.

DA = (Proposed Vertical Glazing Area) - (Vertical Glazing Area allowed by Section C402.4.1).

UA Wall = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each opaque assembly of the exterior wall.

TABLE C402.1.4.1  
EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUES FOR STEEL STUD WALL ASSEMBLIES

NOMINAL STUD DEPTH (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING (inches)	CAVITY <i>R</i> -VALUE (insulation)	CORRECTION FACTOR ( $F_c$ )	EFFECTIVE <i>R</i> -VALUE (ER) (Cavity <i>R</i> -Value $\times F_c$ )
$3\frac{1}{2}$	16	13	0.46	5.98
		15	0.43	6.45
$3\frac{1}{2}$	24	13	0.55	7.15
		15	0.52	7.80
6	16	19	0.37	7.03
		21	0.35	7.35
6	24	19	0.45	8.55
		21	0.43	9.03
8	16	25	0.31	7.75
		25	0.38	9.50

TABLE C402.1.3  
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, R-VALUE METHOD<sup>a, i</sup>

CLIMATE ZONE	1		2		3		4 EXCEPT MARINE		5 AND MARINE 4		6		7		8	
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R
<b>Roofs</b>																
Insulation entirely above roof deck	R-20ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-35ci	R-35ci	R-35ci	R-35ci
Metal buildings <sup>b</sup>	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-19+ R-11 LS	R-30+ R-11 LS	R-30+ R-11 LS	R-30+ R-11 LS	R-30+ R-11 LS
Attic and other	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-49						
<b>Walls, above grade</b>																
Mass <sup>g</sup>	R-5.7ci <sup>e</sup>	R-5.7ci <sup>e</sup>	R-5.7ci <sup>e</sup>	R-7.6ci	R-7.6ci	R-7.6ci	R-9.5ci	R-9.5ci	R-11.4ci	R-11.4ci	R-13.3ci	R-13.3ci	R-15.2ci	R-15.2ci	R-25ci	R-25ci
Metal building	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci	R-13+ R-6.5ci
Metal framed	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci									
Wood framed and other	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13+ R-7.5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci	R-13+ R-7.5ci
<b>Walls, below grade</b>																
Below-grade wall <sup>d</sup>	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>Floors</b>																
Mass <sup>e</sup>	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Joist/Framing	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>Slab-on-grade floors</b>																
Unheated slabs	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
Heated slabs <sup>b</sup>	R-7.5 for 12" below + R-5 full slab	R-10 for 24" below + R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36" below + R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36" below + R-5 full slab	R-15 for 48" below + R-5 full slab											
<b>Opaque doors</b>																
Nonswinging	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75	R-4.75

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

ci = Continuous insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Appendix A.

b. Where using R-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block shall be provided, otherwise use the U-factor compliance method in Table C402.1.4.

c. R-5.7ci is allowed to be substituted with concrete block walls complying with ASTM C90, ungrouted or partially grouted at 32 inches or less on center horizontally, with ungrouted cores filled with materials having a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.44 Btu-in/h·f<sup>2</sup> °F.

d. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the exterior insulation requirements for heated slabs.

e. "Mass floors" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.

f. Steel floor joist systems shall be insulated to R-38.

g. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.

h. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for slab insulation. Perimeter insulation is not required to extend below the bottom of the slab.

i. Not applicable to garage doors. See Table C402.1.4.

**TABLE C402.1.4  
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, U-FACTOR METHOD<sup>a, b</sup>**

CLIMATE ZONE	1		2		3		4		EXCEPT MARINE		AND MARINE 4		5		6		7		8		
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R							
<b>Roofs</b>																					
Insulation entirely above roof deck	U-0.048	U-0.039	U-0.032	U-0.028	U-0.028	U-0.028	U-0.028														
Metal buildings	U-0.044	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.031	U-0.031	U-0.031	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029							
Attic and other	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.021														
<b>Walls, above grade</b>																					
Mass <sup>g</sup>	U-0.151	U-0.151	U-0.151	U-0.151	U-0.123	U-0.123	U-0.104	U-0.104	U-0.090	U-0.090	U-0.080	U-0.080	U-0.071	U-0.071	U-0.071	U-0.071	U-0.061	U-0.061	U-0.061	U-0.061	
Metal building	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.079	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.039	
Metal framed	U-0.077	U-0.077	U-0.077	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.045	
Wood framed and other <sup>e</sup>	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.051	U-0.036	U-0.036	U-0.036	U-0.036								
<b>Walls, below grade</b>																					
Below-grade wall <sup>f</sup>	C-1.140 <sup>e</sup>	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.092	C-0.092	C-0.092															
<b>Floors</b>																					
Mass <sup>d</sup>	U-0.322 <sup>e</sup>	U-0.322 <sup>e</sup>	U-0.107	U-0.087	U-0.076	U-0.076	U-0.076	U-0.076	U-0.074	U-0.074	U-0.074	U-0.074	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.055	U-0.055	U-0.055	U-0.055	
Joist/framing	U-0.066 <sup>e</sup>	U-0.066 <sup>e</sup>	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.033	
<b>Slab-on-grade floors</b>																					
Unheated slabs	F-0.73 <sup>e</sup>	F-0.54	F-0.52	F-0.52	F-0.40	F-0.40															
Heated slabs <sup>f</sup>	F-1.02 0.74	F-1.02 0.74	F-1.02 0.74	F-1.02 0.74	F-1.02 0.74	F-1.02 0.74	F-0.90 0.74	F-0.90 0.74	F-0.86 0.64	F-0.86 0.64	F-0.86 0.64	F-0.86 0.64	F-0.79 0.64	F-0.79 0.64	F-0.79 0.64	F-0.79 0.64	F-0.69 0.55	F-0.69 0.55	F-0.69 0.55	F-0.69 0.55	
<b>Opaque doors</b>																					
Swinging door	U-0.61	U-0.61	U-0.61	U-0.61	U-0.61	U-0.37															
Garage door <14% glazing	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31								

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

ci = Continuous insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Where assembly U-factors, C-factors, and F-factors are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table, and provided that the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A.

b. Where U-factors have been established by testing in accordance with ASTM C1363, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table. The R-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.

c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the U-factor requirements for above-grade mass walls.

d. "Mass floors" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.

e. These C-, F- and U-factors are based on assemblies that are not required to contain insulation.

f. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full slab insulation.

g. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.

U Wall	= Area-weighted average <i>U</i> -value of all above-grade wall assemblies.
UAV	= Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each vertical glazing assembly.
UV	= UAV/total vertical glazing area.
Where the proposed skylight area is less than or equal to the skylight area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of <i>E</i> (Excess Skylight Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:	
E	= $(EA \times US) - (EA \times U \text{ Roof})$ , but not less than zero.
EA	= (Proposed Skylight Area) - (Allowable Skylight Area as specified in Section C402.4.1).
U Roof	= Area-weighted average <i>U</i> -value of all roof assemblies.
UAS	= Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each skylight assembly.
US	= UAS/total skylight area.

**C402.2 Specific building thermal envelope insulation requirements (Prescriptive).** Insulation in building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall comply with Sections C402.2.1 through C402.2.7 and Table C402.1.3.

**C402.2.1 Roof assembly.** The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly. Insulation installed on a suspended ceiling having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered as part of the minimum thermal resistance of the roof insulation. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than 2 layers and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered.

**Exceptions:**

1. Continuously insulated roof assemblies where the thickness of insulation varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less and where the area-weighted *U*-factor is equivalent to the same assembly with the *R*-value specified in Table C402.1.3.
2. Where tapered insulation is used with insulation entirely above deck, the *R*-value where the insulation thickness varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less from the minimum thickness of tapered insulation shall comply with the *R*-value specified in Table C402.1.3.
3. Two layers of insulation are not required where insulation tapers to the roof deck, such as at roof drains.

**C402.2.1.1 Skylight curbs.** Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above the deck or *R*-5, whichever is less.

**Exception:** Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.

**C402.2.2 Above-grade walls.** The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of materials installed in the wall cavity between framing members and continuously on the

walls shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on framing type and construction materials used in the wall assembly. The *R*-value of integral insulation installed in concrete masonry units shall not be used in determining compliance with Table C402.1.3 except as otherwise noted in the table. In determining compliance with Table C402.1.4, the use of the *U*-factor of concrete masonry units with integral insulation shall be permitted.

“Mass walls” where used as a component in the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with one of the following:

1. Weigh not less than 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) of wall surface area.
2. Weigh not less than 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) of wall surface area where the material weight is not more than 120pcf (1900 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).
3. Have a heat capacity exceeding 7 Btu/ft<sup>2</sup> • °F (144 kJ/m<sup>2</sup> • K).
4. Have a heat capacity exceeding 5 Btu/ft<sup>2</sup> • °F (103 kJ/m<sup>2</sup> • K), where the material weight is not more than 120pcf (1900 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**C402.2.3 Floors.** The thermal properties (component *R*-values or assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factors) of floor assemblies over outdoor air or unconditioned space shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3 or C402.1.4 based on the construction materials used in the floor assembly. Floor framing cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs.

“Mass floors” where used as a component of the thermal envelope of a building shall provide one of the following weights:

1. 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) of floor surface area.
2. 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot (1923 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**Exceptions:**

1. The floor framing cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum *R*-value in Table C402.1.3 for “Metal framed” or “Wood framed and other” values for “Walls, Above Grade” and extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing or floor assembly members.
2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an airspace of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the building thermal envelope.

**C402.2.4 Slabs-on-grade perimeter insulation.** Where the slab on grade is in contact with the ground, the minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulation around the perimeter of unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors

designed in accordance with the *R*-value method of Section C402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3. The perimeter insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than of 10 inches (254 mm) of soil.

**Exception:** Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

**C402.2.5 Below-grade walls.** The *C*-factor for the below-grade exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.4. The *R*-value of the insulating material installed continuously within or on the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.3. The *C*-factor or *R*-value required shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below-grade wall, whichever is less.

**C402.2.6 Insulation of radiant heating systems.** *Radiant heating system* panels, and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.5 on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. *Radiant heating system* panels that are installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the *R*-value of insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with Section C402.1.4.

**Exception:** Heated slabs on grade insulated in accordance with Section C402.2.4.

**C402.2.7 Airspaces.** Where the thermal properties of airspaces are used to comply with this code in accordance with Section C401.2, such airspaces shall be enclosed in an unventilated cavity constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where the enclosed airspace is located on the interior side of the continuous air barrier and is bounded on all sides by building components.

**Exception:** The thermal resistance of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous air barrier and adjacent to and behind the exterior wall-covering material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363 modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at an air movement rate of not less than 70 mm/second.

**C402.3 Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance.** Low-sloped roofs directly above cooled conditioned spaces

in *Climate Zones* 1, 2 and 3 shall comply with one or more of the options in Table C402.3.

**Exceptions:** The following roofs and portions of roofs are exempt from the requirements of Table C402.3:

1. Portions of the roof that include or are covered by the following:
  - 1.1. Photovoltaic systems or components.
  - 1.2. Solar air or water-heating systems or components.
  - 1.3. Roof gardens or landscaped roofs.
  - 1.4. Above-roof decks or walkways.
  - 1.5. Skylights.
  - 1.6. HVAC systems and components, and other opaque objects mounted above the roof.
2. Portions of the roof shaded during the peak sun angle on the summer solstice by permanent features of the building or by permanent features of adjacent buildings.
3. Portions of roofs that are ballasted with a minimum stone ballast of 17 pounds per square foot [74 kg/m<sup>2</sup>] or 23 psf [117 kg/m<sup>2</sup>] pavers.
4. Roofs where not less than 75 percent of the roof area complies with one or more of the exceptions to this section.

**C402.3.1 Aged roof solar reflectance.** Where an aged solar reflectance required by Section C402.3 is not available, it shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

$$R_{aged} = [0.2 + 0.7(R_{initial} - 0.2)] \quad (\text{Equation 4-3})$$

where:

$R_{aged}$  = The aged solar reflectance.

$R_{initial}$  = The initial solar reflectance determined in accordance with CRRC-S100.

**C402.4 Fenestration (Prescriptive).** Fenestration shall comply with Sections C402.4.1 through C402.4.5 and Table C402.4. Daylight responsive controls shall comply with this section and Section C405.2.3.1.

**C402.4.1 Maximum area.** The vertical fenestration area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not greater than 30 percent of the gross above-grade wall area. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area.

**C402.4.1.1 Increased vertical fenestration area with daylight responsive controls.** In *Climate Zones* 1 through 6, not more than 40 percent of the gross above-grade wall area shall be vertical fenestration, provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. In buildings not greater than two stories above grade, not less than 50 percent of the net floor area is within a *daylight zone*.

**TABLE C402.3**  
**MINIMUM ROOF REFLECTANCE AND EMITTANCE OPTIONS<sup>a</sup>**

Three-year-aged solar reflectance index <sup>b</sup> of 55 and 3-year aged thermal emittance <sup>c</sup> of 0.75
Three-year-aged solar reflectance index <sup>d</sup> of 64

a. The use of area-weighted averages to comply with these requirements shall be permitted. Materials lacking 3-year-aged tested values for either solar reflectance or thermal emittance shall be assigned both a 3-year-aged solar reflectance in accordance with Section C402.3.1 and a 3-year-aged thermal emittance of 0.90.

b. Aged solar reflectance tested in accordance with ASTM C1549, ASTM E903 or ASTM E1918 or CRRC-S100.

c. Aged thermal emittance tested in accordance with ASTM C1371 or ASTM E408 or CRRC-S100.

d. Solar reflectance index (SRI) shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E1980 using a convection coefficient of 2.1 Btu/h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F (12W/m<sup>2</sup> • K). Calculation of aged SRI shall be based on aged tested values of solar reflectance and thermal emittance.

**TABLE C402.4**  
**BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM U-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS**

CLIMATE ZONE	1	2	3	4 EXCEPT MARINE	5 AND MARINE 4	6	7	8
Vertical fenestration								
<b>U-factor</b>								
Fixed fenestration	0.50	0.50	0.46	0.38	0.38	0.36	0.29	0.29
Operable fenestration	0.65	0.65	0.60	0.45	0.45	0.43	0.37	0.37
Entrance doors	1.10	0.83	0.77	0.77	0.77	0.77	0.77	0.77
<b>SHGC</b>								
Orientation <sup>a</sup>	SEW	N	SEW	N	SEW	N	SEW	N
PF < 0.2	0.25	0.33	0.25	0.33	0.25	0.33	0.48	0.38
0.2 ≤ PF < 0.5	0.30	0.37	0.30	0.37	0.30	0.37	0.53	0.46
PF ≥ 0.5	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.58	0.58	0.61
Skylights								
U-factor	0.75	0.65	0.55	0.50	0.50	0.50	0.50	0.50
SHGC	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.40	0.40	0.40	NR	NR

NR = No Requirement, PF = Projection Factor.

a. "N" indicates vertical fenestration oriented within 45 degrees of true north. "SEW" indicates orientations other than "N." For buildings in the southern hemisphere, reverse south and north. Buildings located at less than 23.5 degrees latitude shall use SEW for all orientations.

2. In buildings three or more stories above grade, not less than 25 percent of the net floor area is within a *daylight zone*.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.3.1 are installed in *daylight zones*.
4. Visible transmittance (VT) of vertical fenestration is not less than 1.1 times solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC).

**Exception:** Fenestration that is outside the scope of NFRC 200 is not required to comply with Item 4.

**C402.4.1.2 Increased skylight area with daylight responsive controls.** The skylight area shall be not more than 6 percent of the roof area provided that *daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.3.1 are installed in *toplitz* zones.

**C402.4.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area.** In an enclosed space greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m<sup>2</sup>) in floor area, directly under a roof with not less than 75 percent of the ceiling area with a ceiling height greater than 15 feet (4572 mm), and used as an office, lobby, atrium, concourse, corridor, storage space, gymnasium/exercise center, convention center, automotive service area, space where manufacturing occurs, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation depot or workshop, the total *toplitz* *daylight zone* shall be not less

than half the floor area and shall provide one of the following:

1. A minimum skylight area to *toplitz* *daylight zone* of not less than 3 percent where all skylights have a VT of not less than 0.40 as determined in accordance with Section C303.1.3.
2. A minimum skylight effective aperture of not less than 1 percent, determined in accordance with Equation 4-4.

$$\text{Skylight Effective Aperture} = \frac{0.85 \times \text{Skylight Area} \times \text{Skylight VT} \times \text{WF}}{\text{Toplit Zone}} \quad (\text{Equation 4-4})$$

where:

Skylight area	= Total fenestration area of skylights.
Skylight VT	= Area weighted average visible transmittance of skylights.
WF	= Area weighted average well factor, where well factor is 0.9 if light well depth is less than 2 feet (610 mm), or 0.7 if light well depth is 2 feet (610 mm) or greater.

Light well depth = Measure vertically from the underside of the lowest point of the skylight glazing to the ceiling plane under the skylight.

**Exception:** Skylights above *daylight zones* of enclosed spaces are not required in:

1. Buildings in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.
2. Spaces where the designed *general lighting* power densities are less than 0.5 W/ft<sup>2</sup> (5.4 W/m<sup>2</sup>).
3. Areas where it is documented that existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on not less than half of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.
4. Spaces where the *daylight zone* under rooftop monitors is greater than 50 percent of the enclosed space floor area.
5. Spaces where the total area minus the area of sidelight *daylight zones* is less than 2,500 square feet (232 m<sup>2</sup>), and where the lighting is controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.3.

**C402.4.2.1 Lighting controls in toplit daylight zones.** *Daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.3.1 shall be provided to control all electric lights within *toplit zones*.

**C402.4.2.2 Haze factor.** Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D1003.

**Exception:** Skylights designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles or the geometry of skylight and light well.

**C402.4.3 Maximum *U*-factor and SHGC.** The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall be as specified in Table C402.4.

The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-5.

$$PF = A/B \quad (\text{Equation 4-5})$$

where:

*PF* = Projection factor (decimal).

*A* = Distance measured horizontally from the farthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.

*B* = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device.

Where different windows or glass doors have different *PF* values, they shall each be evaluated separately.

**C402.4.3.1 Increased skylight SHGC.** In *Climate Zones* 1 through 6, skylights shall be permitted a maximum SHGC of 0.60 where located above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*.

**C402.4.3.2 Increased skylight *U*-factor.** Where skylights are installed above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*, a maximum *U*-factor of 0.9 shall be permitted in *Climate Zones* 1 through 3 and a maximum *U*-factor of 0.75 shall be permitted in *Climate Zones* 4 through 8.

**C402.4.3.3 Dynamic glazing.** Where dynamic glazing is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of Table C402.4, the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Dynamic glazing is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table C402.4.

**C402.4.3.4 Area-weighted *U*-factor.** An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating area-weighted average *U*-factor.

**C402.4.4 Daylight zones.** Daylight zones referenced in Sections C402.4.1.1 through C402.4.3.2 shall comply with Sections C405.2.3.2 and C405.2.3.3, as applicable. Daylight zones shall include *toplit zones* and *sidelit zones*.

**C402.4.5 Doors.** Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.3. Opaque doors shall be considered as part of the gross area of above-grade walls that are part of the building *thermal envelope*. Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.

**C402.5 Air leakage—*thermal envelope* (Mandatory).** The *thermal envelope* of buildings shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through C402.5.8, or the building *thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 779 at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) or an equivalent method approved by the code official and deemed to comply with the provisions of this section when the tested air leakage rate of the building *thermal envelope* is not greater than 0.40 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (2.0 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>). Where compliance is based on such testing, the building shall also comply with Sections C402.5.5, C402.5.6 and C402.5.7.

**C402.5.1 Air barriers.** A continuous air barrier shall be provided throughout the building *thermal envelope*. The air barriers shall be permitted to be located on the inside or outside of the building envelope, located within the assemblies composing the envelope, or any combination thereof. The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1 and C402.5.1.2.

**Exception:** Air barriers are not required in buildings located in *Climate Zone* 2B.

**C402.5.1.1 Air barrier construction.** The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The air barrier shall be continuous for all assemblies that are the thermal envelope of the building and across the joints and assemblies.
2. Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.
3. Penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Joints and seams associated with penetrations shall be sealed in the same manner or taped. Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.
4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.8. Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the air barrier, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the air barrier.

**C402.5.1.2 Air barrier compliance options.** A continuous air barrier for the opaque building envelope shall comply with Section C402.5.1.2.1 or C402.5.1.2.2.

**C402.5.1.2.1 Materials.** Materials with an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (0.02 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall comply with this section. Materials in Items 1 through 16 shall be deemed to comply with this section, provided that joints are sealed and materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Plywood with a thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm).
2. Oriented strand board having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm).
3. Extruded polystyrene insulation board having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
4. Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).

5. Closed-cell spray foam having a minimum density of 1.5 pcf (2.4 kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and having a thickness of not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm).
6. Open-cell spray foam with a density between 0.4 and 1.5 pcf (0.6 and 2.4 kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and having a thickness of not less than 4.5 inches (113 mm).
7. Exterior or interior gypsum board having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
8. Cement board having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
9. Built-up roofing membrane.
10. Modified bituminous roof membrane.
11. Fully adhered single-ply roof membrane.
12. A Portland cement/sand parge, or gypsum plaster having a thickness of not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm).
13. Cast-in-place and precast concrete.
14. Fully grouted concrete block masonry.
15. Sheet steel or aluminum.
16. Solid or hollow masonry constructed of clay or shale masonry units.

**C402.5.1.2.2 Assemblies.** Assemblies of materials and components with an average air leakage not greater than 0.04 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (0.2 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch of water gauge (w.g.)(75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, ASTM E1677 or ASTM E283 shall comply with this section. Assemblies listed in Items 1 through 3 shall be deemed to comply, provided that joints are sealed and the requirements of Section C402.5.1.1 are met.

1. Concrete masonry walls coated with either one application of block filler or two applications of a paint or sealer coating.
2. Masonry walls constructed of clay or shale masonry units with a nominal width of 4 inches (102 mm) or more.
3. A Portland cement/sand parge, stucco or plaster not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness.

**C402.5.2 Air leakage of fenestration.** The air leakage of fenestration assemblies shall meet the provisions of Table C402.5.2. Testing shall be in accordance with the applicable reference test standard in Table C402.5.2 by an accredited, independent testing laboratory and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

#### Exceptions:

1. Field-fabricated fenestration assemblies that are sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.
2. Fenestration in buildings that comply with the testing alternative of Section C402.5 are not required to meet the air leakage requirements in Table C402.5.2.

**TABLE C402.5.2**  
**MAXIMUM AIR LEAKAGE RATE**  
**FOR FENESTRATION ASSEMBLIES**

FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY	MAXIMUM RATE (CFM/FT <sup>2</sup> )	TEST PROCEDURE
Windows	0.20 <sup>a</sup>	AAMA/WDMA/ CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or NFRC 400
Sliding doors	0.20 <sup>a</sup>	
Swinging doors	0.20 <sup>a</sup>	
Skylights – with condensation weepage openings	0.30	
Skylights – all other	0.20 <sup>a</sup>	
Curtain walls	0.06	
Storefront glazing	0.06	
Commercial glazed swinging entrance doors	1.00	
Power-operated sliding doors and power-operated folding doors	1.00	
Revolving doors	1.00	
Garage doors	0.40	ANSI/DASMA 105, NFRC 400, or ASTM E283 at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Rolling doors	1.00	
High-speed doors	1.30	

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. The maximum rate for windows, sliding and swinging doors, and skylights is permitted to be 0.3 cfm per square foot of fenestration or door area when tested in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 at 6.24 psf (300 Pa).

**C402.5.3 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** In Climate Zones 3 through 8, where combustion air is supplied through openings in an exterior wall to a room or space containing a space-conditioning fuel-burning appliance, one of the following shall apply:

1. The room or space containing the appliance shall be located outside of the *building thermal envelope*.
2. The room or space containing the appliance shall be enclosed and isolated from conditioned spaces inside the building thermal envelope. Such rooms shall comply with all of the following:
  - 2.1. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be not less than equivalent to the insulation requirement of below-grade walls as specified in Table C402.1.3 or C402.1.4.
  - 2.2. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.1.
  - 2.3. The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be shall be fully gasketed.
  - 2.4. Water lines and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with Section C403.
  - 2.5. Where an air duct supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through

conditioned space, the duct shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.

**Exception:** Fireplaces and stoves complying with Sections 901 through 905 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and Section 2111.14 of the *International Building Code*.

**C402.5.4 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies.** Doors and access openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies not within the scope of the fenestration assemblies covered by Section C402.5.2 shall be gasketed, weatherstripped or sealed.

**Exceptions:**

1. Door openings required to comply with Section 716 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Doors and door openings required to comply with UL 1784 by the *International Building Code*.

**C402.5.5 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts.** Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intakes and exhaust openings integral to the building envelope shall be provided with dampers in accordance with Section C403.7.7.

**C402.5.6 Loading dock weatherseals.** Cargo door openings and loading door openings shall be equipped with weatherseals that restrict infiltration and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

**C402.5.7 Vestibules.** Building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule, with all doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the building entrance shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors.

**Exceptions:** Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Buildings in Climate Zones 1 and 2.
2. Doors not intended to be used by the public, such as doors to mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, or intended solely for employee use.
3. Doors opening directly from a *sleeping unit* or dwelling unit.
4. Doors that open directly from a space less than 3,000 square feet (298 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.
5. Revolving doors.
6. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
7. Doors that have an air curtain with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at the floor that have been tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 220 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Manual or

automatic controls shall be provided that will operate the air curtain with the opening and closing of the door. Air curtains and their controls shall comply with Section C408.2.3.

**C402.5.8 Recessed lighting.** Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be all of the following:

1. IC-rated.
2. Labeled as having an air leakage rate of not more 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.
3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

## SECTION C403 BUILDING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

**C403.1 General.** Mechanical systems and equipment serving the building heating, cooling, ventilating or refrigerating needs shall comply with this section.

**C403.1.1 Calculation of heating and cooling loads.** Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the building shall be determined in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183 or by an *approved* equivalent computational procedure using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system in accordance with the ASHRAE *HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook* by an approved equivalent computational procedure.

**C403.2 System design (Mandatory).** Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with Sections C403.2.1 and C403.2.2. Where elements of a building's mechanical systems are addressed in Sections C403.3 through C403.12, such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

**C403.2.1 Zone isolation required (Mandatory).** HVAC systems serving *zones* that are over 25,000 square feet (2323 m<sup>2</sup>) in floor area or that span more than one floor and are designed to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. Each isolation area shall be equipped with *isolation devices* and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of Section C403.4.2.2. Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

### Exceptions:

1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).

2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.

3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a *zone* are inoperative.

**C403.2.2 Ventilation (Mandatory).** Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Where mechanical ventilation is provided, the system shall provide the capability to reduce the outdoor air supply to the minimum required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

**C403.3 Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies (Mandatory).** Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in Section C403.3.2.

**C403.3.1 Equipment sizing (Mandatory).** The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1. A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

### Exceptions:

1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.

### C403.3.2 HVAC equipment performance requirements (Mandatory)

Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(9) when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of Table C403.3.2(10). The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein.

**C403.3.2.1 Water-cooled centrifugal chilling packages (Mandatory).** Equipment not designed for operation at AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44°F

(7°C) leaving chilled-water temperature and 2.4 gpm/ton evaporator fluid flow and 85°F (29°C) entering condenser water temperature with 3 gpm/ton (0.054 l/s • kW) condenser water flow shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load ratings requirements adjusted using Equations 4-6 and 4-7.

$$FL_{adj} = FL/K_{adj} \quad (\text{Equation 4-6})$$

$$PLV_{adj} = IPLV/K_{adj} \quad (\text{Equation 4-7})$$

where:

$$K_{adj} = A \times B$$

$$FL = \text{Full-load kW/ton value as specified in Table C403.3.2(7).}$$

$$FL_{adj} = \text{Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.}$$

$$IPLV = \text{Value as specified in Table C403.3.2(7).}$$

$$PLV_{adj} = \text{Maximum } NPLV \text{ rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.}$$

$$A = 0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 - 0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 - 0.147199 \times (LIFT) + 3.9302$$

$$B = 0.0015 \times L_{vg} E_{vap} + 0.934$$

$$LIFT = L_{vg} Cond - L_{vg} E_{vap}$$

$$L_{vg} Cond = \text{Full-load condenser leaving fluid temperature (°F).}$$

$$L_{vg} E_{vap} = \text{Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F).}$$

The  $FL_{adj}$  and  $PLV_{adj}$  values are only applicable for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

1. Minimum evaporator leaving temperature: 36°F.
2. Maximum condenser leaving temperature: 115°F.
3.  $20^{\circ}\text{F} \leq LIFT \leq 80^{\circ}\text{F}$ .

**C403.3.2.2 Positive displacement (air- and water-cooled) chilling packages (Mandatory).** Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of Table C403.3.2(7) when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

**C403.3 Hot gas bypass limitation.** Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in Table C403.3.3, as limited by Section C403.5.1.

**TABLE C403.3.3  
MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY**

RATED CAPACITY	MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)
≤ 240,000 Btu/h	50
> 240,000 Btu/h	25

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**C403.3.4 Boiler turndown.** Boiler systems with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in Table C403.3.4.

The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single-input boilers, one or more *modulating boilers* or a combination of single-input and *modulating boilers*.

**TABLE C403.3.4  
BOILER TURNDOWN**

BOILER SYSTEM DESIGN INPUT (Btu/h)	MINIMUM TURNDOWN RATIO
≥ 1,000,000 and less than or equal to 5,000,000	3 to 1
> 5,000,000 and less than or equal to 10,000,000	4 to 1
> 10,000,000	5 to 1

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**C403.4 Heating and cooling system controls (Mandatory).** Each heating and cooling system shall be provided with controls in accordance with Sections C403.4.1 through C403.4.5.

**C403.4.1 Thermostatic controls (Mandatory).** The supply of heating and cooling energy to each *zone* shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the *zone*. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, not fewer than one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

**Exception:** Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only building envelope heat losses, gains or both serving one or more perimeter *zones* also served by an interior system provided that both of the following conditions are met:

1. The perimeter system includes not fewer than one thermostatic control *zone* for each building exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within ± 45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet (15 240 mm).
2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by thermostats located within the *zones* served by the system.

**C403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory).** Heat pumps having supplementary electric resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplementary heat operation where the heat pump can provide the heating load.

**TABLE C403.3.2(1)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System	13.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	14.0 SEER	
Through-the-wall (air cooled)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split system	12.0 SEER	
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	
Small-duct high-velocity (air cooled)	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.2 EER 12.8 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.6 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.4 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 12.2 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.8 EER 11.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.7 EER 11.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 11.0 IEER	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 340/360
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	

*(continued)*

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.3.2(1)—continued**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUB-CATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240          AHRI 340/360
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.



**TABLE C403.3.2(2)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System	14.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	14.0 SEER	
Through-the-wall, air cooled	$\leq 30,000$ Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System	12.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	
Single-duct high-velocity air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	
Air cooled (cooling mode)	$\geq 65,000$ Btu/h and $< 135,000$ Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.0 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 11.8 IEER	
	$\geq 135,000$ Btu/h and $< 240,000$ Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.6 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.4 EER 11.4 IEER	
	$\geq 240,000$ Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 10.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.3 EER 9.4 IEER	
Water to Air: Water Loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	ISO 13256-1
	$\geq 17,000$ Btu/h and $< 65,000$ Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	
	$\geq 65,000$ Btu/h and $< 135,000$ Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	
Water to Air: Ground Water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	ISO 13256-1
Brine to Air: Ground Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	ISO 13256-1
Water to Water: Water Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water to Water: Ground Water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	
Brine to Water: Ground Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering fluid	12.1 EER	

*(continued)*

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.3.2(2)—continued**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	—	Split System	8.2 HSPF	AHRI 210/240
		—	Single Package	8.0 HSPF	
Through-the-wall, (air cooled, heating mode)	$\leq 30,000 \text{ Btu/h}^b$ (cooling capacity)	—	Split System	7.4 HSPF	AHRI 210/240
		—	Single Package	7.4 HSPF	
Small-duct high velocity (air cooled, heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	—	Split System	6.8 HSPF	
Air cooled (heating mode)	$\geq 65,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $< 135,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ (cooling capacity)	—	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	AHRI 340/360
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	
	$\geq 135,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ (cooling capacity)	—	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	
Water to Air: Water Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP	ISO 13256-1
Water to Air: Ground Water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP	
Brine to Air: Ground Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	3.2 COP	
Water to Water: Water Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO 13256-2
Water to Water: Ground Water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.1 COP	
Brine to Water: Ground Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	2.5 COP	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, air-cooled heat pumps less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER and HSPF values are those set by NAECA.



**TABLE C403.3.2(3)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS,**  
**PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS,**  
**SINGLE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
PTAC (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER	AHRI 310/380
PTAC (cooling mode) replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.9 – (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.8 – (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (heating mode) new construction	All Capacities	—	3.2 – (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP	
PTHP (heating mode) replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	—	2.9 – (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP	
SPVAC (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	9.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.9 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.6 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	9.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.9 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.6 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.0 COP	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.0 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	2.9 COP	
Room air conditioners, with louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	ANSI/ AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	10.9 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	10.7 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h and ≤ 25,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
	> 25,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 CEER	
Room air conditioners, without louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 11,000 Btu/h	—	9.6 CEER	
	≥ 11,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.5 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps with louvered sides	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps without louvered sides	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.7 CEER	

(continued)

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.3.2(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS,**  
**PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS,**  
**SINGLE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Room air conditioner casement only	All capacities	—	9.5 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
Room air conditioner casement-slider	All capacities	—	10.4 CEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

“Cap” = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit’s capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit’s capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

- a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
- b. Replacement unit shall be factory labeled as follows: “MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY: NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS.” Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches (406 mm) in height and less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in width.

**TABLE C403.3.2(4)**  
**WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS,**  
**WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY <sup>d,e</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Warm-air furnaces, gas fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	80% AFUE or 80% $E_t^c$	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or ANSI Z21.47
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity <sup>c</sup>	80% $E_t^f$	ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnaces, oil fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	83% AFUE or 80% $E_t^c$	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or UL 727
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity <sup>b</sup>	81% $E_t^g$	UL 727
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% $E_c$	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% $E_c$	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% $E_c$	UL 731

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

- a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
- b. Minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit’s controls.
- c. Combination units not covered by the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987 (NAECA) (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h [19 kW]) shall comply with either rating.
- d.  $E_t$  = Thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed discussion.
- e.  $E_c$  = Combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.
- f.  $E_c$  = Combustion efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jackets not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.
- g.  $E_t$  = Thermal efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

**TABLE C403.3.2(5)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE <sup>a</sup>	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY <sup>d, e</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
Boilers, hot water	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h <sup>f, g</sup>	82% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	80% $E_t$	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>a</sup>	82% $E_c$	
	Oil-fired <sup>c</sup>	< 300,000 Btu/h <sup>g</sup>	84% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	82% $E_t$	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>a</sup>	84% $E_c$	
Boilers, steam	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h <sup>f</sup>	80% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
	Gas-fired- all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	79% $E_t$	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>a</sup>	79% $E_t$	
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	77% $E_t$	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>a</sup>	77% $E_t$	
	Oil-fired <sup>c</sup>	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>b</sup>	81% $E_t$	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>a</sup>	81% $E_t$	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

- a. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.
- b. Maximum capacity – minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.
- c. Includes oil-fired (residual).
- d.  $E_c$  = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).
- e.  $E_t$  = Thermal efficiency. See referenced standard for detailed information.
- f. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant-burning ignition pilot.
- g. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.

**TABLE C403.3.2(6)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**CONDENSING UNITS, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY <sup>b</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	10.1 EER 11.2 IPLV	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water or evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	13.1 EER 13.1 IPLV	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

- a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
- b. IPLVs are only applicable to equipment with capacity modulation.

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.3.2(7)**  
**WATER CHILLING PACKAGES – EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS<sup>a, b, d</sup>**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	BEFORE 1/1/2015		AS OF 1/1/2015		TEST PROCEDURE <sup>c</sup>	
			Path A	Path B	Path A	Path B		
Air-cooled chillers	< 150 Tons	EER (Btu/W)	≥ 9.562 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	AHRI 550/ 590	
			≥ 12.500 IPLV		≥ 13.700 IPLV	≥ 15,800 IPLV		
	≥ 150 Tons		≥ 9.562 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL		
			≥ 12.500 IPLV		≥ 14.000 IPLV	≥ 16,100 IPLV		
Air cooled without condenser, electrically operated	All capacities	EER (Btu/W)	Air-cooled chillers without condenser shall be rated with matching condensers and complying with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.					
Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 Tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.780 FL	≤ 0.800 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	≤ 0.780 FL	AHRI 550/ 590	
			≤ 0.630 IPLV	≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV		
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons		≤ 0.775 FL	≤ 0.790 FL	≤ 0.720 FL	≤ 0.750 FL		
			≤ 0.615 IPLV	≤ 0.586 IPLV	≤ 0.560 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV		
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.680 FL	≤ 0.718 FL	≤ 0.660 FL	≤ 0.680 FL		
			≤ 0.580 IPLV	≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.440 IPLV		
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.620 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.625 FL		
			≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV	≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.410 IPLV		
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.620 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL		
			≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV		
Water cooled, electrically operated centrifugal	< 150 Tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.634 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.695 FL	AHRI 560	
			≤ 0.596 IPLV	≤ 0.450 IPLV	≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.440 IPLV		
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.634 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.635 FL		
			≤ 0.596 IPLV	≤ 0.450 IPLV	≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV		
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons		≤ 0.576 FL	≤ 0.600 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.595 FL		
			≤ 0.549 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.390 IPLV		
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.576 FL	≤ 0.600 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL		
			≤ 0.549 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV		
	≥ 600 Tons		≤ 0.570 FL	≤ 0.590 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL		
			≤ 0.539 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV		
Air cooled, absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.600 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 0.600 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	AHRI 560	
Water cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.700 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 0.700 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>		
Absorption, double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.000 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 1.000 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>		
Absorption double effect direct fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.050 IPLV		≥ 1.050 IPLV			
			≥ 1.000 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>	≥ 1.000 FL	NA <sup>c</sup>		
			≥ 1.000 IPLV		≥ 1.050 IPLV			

- The requirements for centrifugal chiller shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions in accordance with Section C403.3.2.1 and are only applicable for the range of conditions listed in Section C403.3.2.1. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.
- Both the full-load and IPLV requirements shall be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. Where there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.
- NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B and only Path A can be used for compliance.
- FL represents the full-load performance requirements and IPLV the part-load performance requirements.

**TABLE C403.3.2(8)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:**  
**HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT**

EQUIPMENT TYPE <sup>a</sup>	TOTAL SYSTEM HEAT REJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION <sup>i</sup>	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED <sup>b, c, d, g, h</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>e, f</sup>
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 157,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 135,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F Condensing Temperature 190°F Entering Gas Temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h × hp	AHRI 460

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, L/s • kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h • hp)/(2550.7),

db = dry bulb temperature, °F, wb = wet bulb temperature, °F.

- a. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of wet and dry heat exchange sections.
- b. For purposes of this table, open circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition, divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
- c. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition, divided by the sum of the fan nameplate-rated motor power and the spray pump nameplate-rated motor power.
- d. For purposes of this table, air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
- e. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling towers.
- f. Where a certification program exists for a covered product and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, then the product shall be listed in the certification program; or, where a certification program exists for a covered product, and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, but the product is not listed in the existing certification program, the ratings shall be verified by an independent laboratory test report.
- g. Cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.
- h. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.
- i. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-507A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-507A shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed in this table with R-507A as the test fluid.

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.3.2(9)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY <sup>a</sup>	MINIMUM SCOP-127 <sup>b</sup> EFFICIENCY DOWNFLOW UNITS / UPFLOW UNITS	TEST PROCEDURE
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.20 / 2.09	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.90 / 1.79	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.60 / 2.49	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.50 / 2.39	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.40 / 2.29	
Air conditioners, water cooled with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.55 / 2.44	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.45 / 2.34	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.35 / 2.24	
Air conditioners, glycol cooled (rated at 40% propylene glycol)	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.50 / 2.39	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.15 / 2.04	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
Air conditioners, glycol cooled (rated at 40% propylene glycol) with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.45 / 2.34	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.05 / 1.94	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Net sensible cooling capacity: the total gross cooling capacity less the latent cooling less the energy to the air movement system. (Total Gross – latent – Fan Power).  
 b. Sensible coefficient of performance (SCOP-127): a ratio calculated by dividing the net sensible cooling capacity in watts by the total power input in watts (excluding reheaters and humidifiers) at conditions defined in ASHRAE Standard 127. The net sensible cooling capacity is the gross sensible capacity minus the energy dissipated into the cooled space by the fan system.

**TABLE C403.3.2(10)**  
**HEAT TRANSFER EQUIPMENT**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE <sup>a</sup>
Liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers	Plate type	NR	AHRI 400

NR = No Requirement.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

**C403.4.1.2 Deadband (Mandatory).** Where used to control both heating and cooling, *zone* thermostatic controls shall be configured to provide a temperature range or deadband of not less than 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zone* is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

**Exceptions:**

1. Thermostats requiring manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature control as approved by the *code official*.

**C403.4.1.3 Setpoint overlap restriction (Mandatory).** Where a *zone* has a separate heating and a separate cooling thermostatic control located within the *zone*, a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be configured to prevent the heating setpoint from exceeding the cooling setpoint and to maintain a deadband in accordance with Section C403.4.1.2.

**C403.4.1.4 Heated or cooled vestibules (Mandatory).** The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

**Exception:** Control of heating or cooling provided by site-recovered energy or transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

**C403.4.1.5 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control (Mandatory).** Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

**C403.4.2 Off-hour controls (Mandatory).** Each zone shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an automatic time clock or programmable control system.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Zones* that will be operated continuously.
2. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a manual shutoff switch located with *ready access*.

**C403.4.2.1 Thermostatic setback (Mandatory).**

Thermostatic setback controls shall be configured to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

**C403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and shutdown (Mandatory).**

Automatic time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for not fewer than 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a manual override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

**C403.4.2.3 Automatic start (Mandatory).**

Automatic start controls shall be provided for each HVAC system. The controls shall be configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the HVAC system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy.

**C403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls.** The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with Sections C403.4.3.1 through C403.4.3.3. Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include automatic controls configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems composed of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146.5 kW) input design capacity shall include either a multistaged or modulating burner.

**C403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system.** Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

**C403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system.** Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a deadband between changeover from one mode to the other of not less than 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for not less than 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be not more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

**C403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems.** Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with Sections C403.4.3.3.1 through C403.4.3.3.3.

**C403.4.3.3.1 Temperature deadband.** Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of not less than 20°F (11°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

**Exception:** Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, deadbands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.

**C403.4.3.3.2 Heat rejection.** The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems in Climate Zones 3 through 8:

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for any flow necessary for freeze protection, or low-leakage positive-closure dampers shall be provided.
2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open-circuit cooling tower.
3. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

**Exception:** Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

**C403.4.3.3.3 Two-position valve.** Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 hp (7.5 kW) shall have a two-position valve.

**C403.4.4 Part-load controls.** Hydronic systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h (87.9 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that are configured to do all of the following:

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying building heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature, building-return water temperature or outside air temperature. The temperature shall be reset by not less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.

2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp (1.5 kW) or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment by valves that modulate or step open and close, or pumps that modulate or turn on and off as a function of load.
3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating-water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
  - 3.1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.
  - 3.2. Where pumps have automatic direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when zone heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in Table C403.4.4 based on the climate zone and system served.
4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this Section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open or to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

**Exceptions:**

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.
2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.

3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.
4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than 50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

**C403.4.5 Pump isolation.** Chilled water plants including more than one chiller shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

Boiler systems including more than one boiler shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the boiler system when a boiler is shut down.

**C403.5 Economizers (Prescriptive).** Economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.1 through C403.5.5.

An air or water economizer shall be provided for the following cooling systems:

1. Chilled water systems with a total cooling capacity, less cooling capacity provided with air economizers, as specified in Table C403.5(1).
2. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 54,000 Btu/h (15.8 kW) in buildings having other than a *Group R* occupancy,

The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW), whichever is greater.

3. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 270,000 Btu/h (79.1 kW) in buildings having a *Group R* occupancy.

The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in

**TABLE C403.4.4  
VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND-CONTROLLED PUMPS**

CHILLED WATER AND HEAT REJECTION LOOP PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	HEATING WATER PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	VSD REQUIRED FOR MOTORS WITH RATED OUTPUT OF:
1A, 1B, 2B	—	≥ 2 hp
2A, 3B	—	≥ 3 hp
3A, 3C, 4A, 4B	7, 8	≥ 5 hp
4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B	3C, 5A, 5C, 6A, 6B	≥ 7.5 hp
—	4A, 4C, 5B	≥ 10 hp
7, 8	4B	≥ 15 hp
—	2A, 2B, 3A, 3B	≥ 25 hp
—	1B	≥ 100 hp
—	1A	≥ 200 hp

the building or 1,500,000 Btu/h (440 kW), whichever is greater.

**Exceptions:** Economizers are not required for the following systems.

1. Individual fan systems not served by chilled water for buildings located in *Climate Zones* 1A and 1B.
2. Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.
3. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week.
4. Systems serving supermarket areas with open refrigerated casework.
5. Where the cooling efficiency is greater than or equal to the efficiency requirements in Table C403.5(2).
6. Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with Section C403.9.5.

**TABLE C403.5(2)**  
**EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCY PERFORMANCE EXCEPTION FOR ECONOMIZERS**

CLIMATE ZONES	COOLING EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT (EER OR IPLV)
2A, 2B	10% efficiency improvement
3A, 3B	15% efficiency improvement
4A, 4B	20% efficiency improvement

**C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control.** Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling

systems by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100-percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).
2. Direct expansion (DX) units that control 75,000 Btu/h (22 kW) or greater of rated capacity of the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
3. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with Table C403.5.1.

**C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact.** HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase building heating energy use during normal operation.

**Exception:** Economizers on variable air volume (VAV) systems that cause zone level heating to increase because of a reduction in supply air temperature.

**C403.5.3 Air economizers.** Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, air economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.3.1 through C403.5.3.5.

**C403.5.3.1 Design capacity.** Air economizer systems shall be configured to modulate *outdoor air* and return

**TABLE C403.5(1)**  
**MINIMUM CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY FOR DETERMINING ECONOMIZER COOLING REQUIREMENTS**

CLIMATE ZONES (COOLING)	TOTAL CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM CAPACITY LESS CAPACITY OF COOLING UNITS WITH AIR ECONOMIZERS	
	Local Water-cooled Chilled-water Systems	Air-cooled Chilled-water Systems or District Chilled-Water Systems
1A	Economizer not required	Economizer not required
1B, 2A, 2B	960,000 Btu/h	1,250,000 Btu/h
3A, 3B, 3C, 4A, 4B, 4C	720,000 Btu/h	940,000 Btu/h
5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	1,320,000 Btu/h	1,720,000 Btu/h

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**TABLE C403.5.1**  
**DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS**

RATING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF MECHANICAL COOLING STAGES	MINIMUM COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT <sup>a</sup>
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% of full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. For mechanical cooling stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as *outdoor air* for cooling.

**C403.5.3.2 Control signal.** Economizer controls and dampers shall be configured to sequence the dampers with the mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed-air temperature.

**Exception:** The use of mixed-air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems controlled from space temperature (such as single-zone systems).

**C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff.** Air economizers shall be configured to automatically reduce *outdoor air* intake to the design minimum *outdoor air* quantity when *outdoor air* intake will not reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types for specific climates shall be chosen from Table C403.5.3.3. High-limit shutoff control settings for these control types shall be those specified in Table C403.5.3.3.

**C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air.** Systems shall be capable of relieving excess *outdoor air* during air economizer operation to prevent overpressurizing the building. The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid recirculation into the building.

**C403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers.** Return, exhaust/relief and outdoor air dampers used in economizers shall comply with Section C403.7.7.

**C403.5.4 Water-side economizers.** Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, water-side economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.4.1 and C403.5.4.2.

**C403.5.4.1 Design capacity.** Water economizer systems shall be configured to cool supply air by indirect evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the

expected system cooling load at *outdoor air* temperatures of not greater than 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb.

**Exceptions:**

1. Systems primarily serving computer rooms in which 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 40°F (4°C) dry bulb/35°F (1.7°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.
2. Systems primarily serving computer rooms with dry cooler water economizers that satisfy 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 35°F (1.7°C) dry bulb.
3. Systems where dehumidification requirements cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb and where 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 45°F (7°C) dry bulb/40°F (4°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.

**C403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop.** Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system shall either have a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (45 kPa) of water or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (noneconomizer) mode.

**C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics (Mandatory).** Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(3) and variable refrigerant flow (VRF) units that are equipped with an

TABLE C403.5.3.3  
HIGH-LIMIT SHUTOFF CONTROL SETTING FOR AIR ECONOMIZERS<sup>b</sup>

DEVICE TYPE	CLIMATE ZONE	REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (ECONOMIZER OFF WHEN):	
		Equation	Description
Fixed dry bulb	1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > 75^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
	5A, 6A	$T_{OA} > 70^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F
	1A, 2A, 3A, 4A	$T_{OA} > 65^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 65°F
Differential dry bulb	1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Fixed enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperatures	All	$h_{OA} > 28 \text{ Btu/lb}^a \text{ or } T_{OA} > 75^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air <sup>a</sup> or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
Differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperature	All	$h_{OA} > h_{RA} \text{ or } T_{OA} > 75^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, °C = (°F - 32)/1.8, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.

- At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.
- Devices with selectable setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

economizer in accordance with Sections C403.5 through C403.5.4 shall include a fault detection and diagnostics system complying with the following:

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
  - 1.1. Outside air.
  - 1.2. Supply air.
  - 1.3. Return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 2^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $1.1^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) over the range of  $40^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $80^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $26.7^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).
3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 3$  percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
  - 4.1. Free cooling available.
  - 4.2. Economizer enabled.
  - 4.3. Compressor enabled.
  - 4.4. Heating enabled.
  - 4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
  - 4.6. The current value of each sensor.
5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for *access* by day-to-day operating or service personnel, or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.
7. The fault detection and diagnostics system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
  - 7.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
  - 7.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
  - 7.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
  - 7.4. Damper not modulating.
  - 7.5. Excess outdoor air.

**C403.6 Requirements for mechanical systems serving multiple zones.** Sections C403.6.1 through C403.6.9 shall apply to mechanical systems serving multiple zones.

**C403.6.1 Variable air volume and multiple-zone systems.** Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that have zone controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, re-cooled or mixed in each zone to one of the following:

1. Twenty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems with DDC and 30 percent for other systems.
2. Systems with DDC where all of the following apply:
  - 2.1. The airflow rate in the deadband between heating and cooling does not exceed 20 percent of the zone design peak supply rate or

higher allowed rates under Items 3, 4 and 5 of this section.

- 2.2. The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.
- 2.3. The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.
3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. Any higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the system as approved by the code official.
5. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

**Exception:** The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

1. *Zones* or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a site-recovered, including condenser heat, or site-solar energy source.
2. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.

**C403.6.2 Single-duct VAV systems, terminal devices.** Single-duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

**C403.6.3 Dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices.** Systems that have one warm air duct and one cool air duct shall use terminal devices that are configured to reduce the flow from one duct to a minimum before mixing of air from the other duct takes place.

**C403.6.4 Single-fan dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, economizers.** Individual dual-duct or mixing heating and cooling systems with a single fan and with total capacities greater than 90,000 Btu/h [(26.4 kW) 7.5 tons] shall not be equipped with air economizers.

**C403.6.5 Supply-air temperature reset controls.** Multiple-zone HVAC systems shall include controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be configured to reset the supply air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference

between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

**Exceptions:**

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent of the energy for reheating is from site-recovered or site-solar energy sources.
3. Zones with peak supply air quantities of 300 cfm (142 L/s) or less.

**C403.6.6 Multiple-zone VAV system ventilation optimization control.** Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have automatic controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system *ventilation efficiency* ( $E_v$ ) as defined by the *International Mechanical Code*.

**Exceptions:**

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fan-powered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

**C403.6.7 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control.** Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have automatic controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for ventilation.
2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
  - 3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
  - 3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

**C403.6.8 Setpoints for direct digital control.** For systems with direct digital control of individual zones reporting to the central control panel, the static pressure setpoint shall be reset based on the *zone* requiring the most pressure. In such case, the setpoint is reset lower until one *zone* damper is nearly wide open. The direct digital controls shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. Automatic detection of any *zone* that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generation of an alarm to the system operational location.

3. Allowance for an operator to readily remove one or more *zones* from the reset algorithm.

**C403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location.** Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller setpoint is not greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major duct splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

**C403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems (Mandatory).** In addition to other requirements of Section C403 applicable to the provision of ventilation air or the exhaust of air, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections C403.7.1 through C403.7.7.

**C403.7.1 Demand control ventilation (Mandatory).**

Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for spaces larger than 500 square feet ( $46.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) and with an average occupant load of 25 people or greater per 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area, as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and served by systems with one or more of the following:

1. An air-side economizer.
2. Automatic modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
3. A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s).

**Exceptions:**

1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.
2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. Systems with a design outdoor airflow less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).
4. Spaces where the supply airflow rate minus any makeup or outgoing transfer air requirement is less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).
5. Ventilation provided only for process loads.

**C403.7.2 Enclosed parking garage ventilation controls (Mandatory).** Enclosed parking garages used for storing or handling automobiles operating under their own power shall employ contamination-sensing devices and automatic controls configured to stage fans or modulate fan average airflow rates to 50 percent or less of design capacity, or intermittently operate fans less than 20 percent of the occupied time or as required to maintain acceptable contaminant levels in accordance with *International Mechanical Code* provisions. Failure of contamination-sensing devices shall cause the exhaust fans to operate continuously at design airflow.

**Exceptions:**

1. Garages with a total exhaust capacity less than 22,500 cfm (10 620 L/s) with ventilation systems that do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.

2. Garages that have a garage area to ventilation system motor nameplate power ratio that exceeds 1125 cfm/hp (710 L/s/kW) and do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.

**C403.7.3 Ventilation air heating control (Mandatory).** Units that provide ventilation air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative building loads or outdoor air temperatures indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

**C403.7.4 Energy recovery ventilation systems (Mandatory).** Where the supply airflow rate of a fan system exceeds the values specified in Tables C403.7.4(1) and C403.7.4(2), the system shall include an energy recovery system. The energy recovery system shall be configured to provide a change in the enthalpy of the outdoor air supply of not less than 50 percent of the difference between the outdoor air and return air enthalpies, at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass or controls that permit operation of the economizer as required by Section C403.5.

**Exception:** An energy recovery ventilation system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are prohibited by the *International Mechanical Code*.

2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include not fewer than one of the following features:
  - 2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems configured to reduce exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.
  - 2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to or greater than 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated not warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) above room setpoint, cooled to not cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) below room setpoint, with no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.
  3. Systems serving spaces that are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C) and that are not cooled.
  4. Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor heating energy is provided from site-recovered or site-solar energy.
  5. Heating energy recovery in *Climate Zones* 1 and 2.
  6. Cooling energy recovery in *Climate Zones* 3C, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.

**TABLE C403.7.4(1)**  
**ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT**  
**(Ventilation systems operating less than 8,000 hours per year)**

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
DESIGN SUPPLY FAN AIRFLOW RATE (cfm)								
3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
1B, 2B, 5C	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥ 26,000	≥ 12,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000
6B	≥ 28,000	≥ 26,5000	≥ 11,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,500
1A, 2A, 3A, 4A, 5A, 6A	≥ 26,000	≥ 16,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	> 120
7, 8	≥ 4,500	≥ 4,000	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,000	>140	> 120	> 100	> 80

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

NR = Not Required.

**TABLE C403.7.4(2)**  
**ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT**  
**(Ventilation systems operating not less than 8,000 hours per year)**

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)								
3C	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
1B, 2B, 3B, 4C, 5C	NR	≥ 19,500	≥ 9,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000	≥ 3,000	≥ 1,500	≥ 120
1A, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B	≥ 2,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	≥ 500	≥ 140	≥ 120	≥ 100	≥ 80
4A, 5A, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	≥ 200	≥ 130	≥ 100	≥ 80	≥ 70	≥ 60	≥ 50	≥ 40

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

NR = Not Required.

7. Systems requiring dehumidification that employ energy recovery in series with the cooling coil.
8. Where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the building exterior is less than 75 percent of the design *outdoor air* flow rate.
9. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week at the *outdoor air* percentage covered by Table C403.7.4(1).
10. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.
11. Commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

**C403.7.5 Kitchen exhaust systems (Mandatory).** Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space shall not exceed the greater of the following:

1. The ventilation rate required to meet the space heating or cooling load.
2. The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent space where available transfer air is considered to be that portion of outdoor ventilation air not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, and not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces.

Where total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate is greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s), each hood shall be a factory-built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in compliance with UL 710. Each hood shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in Table C403.7.5 and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Not less than 50 percent of all replacement air shall be transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.
2. Demand ventilation systems on not less than 75 percent of the exhaust air that are configured to provide not less than a 50-percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates, including controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and

containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle.

3. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust airflow.

Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

**Exception:** Where not less than 75 percent of all the replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

**C403.7.6 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms (Mandatory).** In *Group R-1* buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of Sections C403.7.6.1 and C403.7.6.2. Card key controls comply with these requirements.

**C403.7.6.1 Temperature setpoint controls.** Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling setpoint and lower the heating setpoint by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant setpoint within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom. The controls shall be capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling setpoint to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating setpoint to not higher than 60°F (16°C) when the guestroom is unrented or has not been continuously occupied for more than 16 hours or a *networked guestroom control system* indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 30 minutes. A *networked guestroom control system* that is capable of returning the thermostat setpoints to default occupied setpoints 60 minutes prior to the time a guestroom is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cooling that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a setpoint not lower than 65-percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.

**C403.7.6.2 Ventilation controls.** Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the ventilation and

**TABLE C403.7.5**  
**MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE,**  
**CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH**

TYPE OF HOOD	LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT	MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT	HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT	EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT
Wall-mounted canopy	140	210	280	385
Single island	280	350	420	490
Double island (per side)	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	NA	NA
Backshelf/Pass-over	210	210	280	NA

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 305 mm.

NA = Not Allowed.

exhaust fans within 30 minutes of the occupants leaving the guestroom, or *isolation devices* shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

**Exception:** Guestroom ventilation systems are not precluded from having an automatic daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air ventilation during unrented periods at the design ventilation rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

**C403.7.7 Shutoff dampers (Mandatory).** Outdoor air intake and exhaust openings and stairway and shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. The dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 4 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (20.3 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>) of damper surface area at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) and shall be labeled by an approved agency when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose.

Outdoor air intake and exhaust dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to close when the systems or spaces served are not in use or during unoccupied period warm-up and setback operation, unless the systems served require outdoor or exhaust air in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* or the dampers are opened to provide intentional economizer cooling.

Stairway and shaft vent dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to open upon the activation of any fire alarm initiating device of the building's fire alarm system or the interruption of power to the damper.

**Exception:** Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall be an alternative to motorized dampers for exhaust and relief openings as follows:

1. In buildings less than three stories in height above grade plane.
2. In buildings of any height located in *Climate Zones* 1, 2 or 3.
3. Where the design exhaust capacity is not greater than 300 cfm (142 L/s).

Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 20 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (101.6 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>) where not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension and

40 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (203.2 L/s • m<sup>2</sup>) where less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension. The rate of air leakage shall be determined at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. The dampers shall be labeled by an approved agency.

**C403.8 Fans and fan controls.** Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with Sections C403.8.1 through C403.8.5.1.

**C403.8.1 Allowable fan horsepower (Mandatory).** Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) at fan system design conditions shall not exceed the allowable *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1) or *fan system bhp* (Option 2) shown in Table C403.8.1(1). This includes supply fans, exhaust fans, return/relief fans, and fan-powered terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single-zone variable air volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation.

**Exceptions:**

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.
2. Individual exhaust fans with motor nameplate horsepower of 1 hp (0.746 kW) or less are exempt from the allowable fan horsepower requirement.

**C403.8.2 Motor nameplate horsepower (Mandatory).** For each fan, the fan brake horsepower shall be indicated on the construction documents and the selected motor shall be not larger than the first available motor size greater than the following:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp (4413 W), 1.5 times the fan brake horsepower.
2. For fans 6 bhp (4413 W) and larger, 1.3 times the fan brake horsepower.
3. Systems complying with Section C403.8.1 *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1).

**Exception:** Fans with motor nameplate horsepower less than 1 hp (746 W) are exempt from this section.

**TABLE C403.8.1(1)  
FAN POWER LIMITATION**

	LIMIT	CONSTANT VOLUME	VARIABLE VOLUME
Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp	Allowable nameplate motor hp	$hp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0011$	$hp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0015$
Option 2: Fan system bhp	Allowable fan system bhp	$bhp \leq CFM_S \times 0.00094 + A$	$bhp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0013 + A$

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

where:

$CFM_S$  = The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute.

$hp$  = The maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower.

$bhp$  = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.

$A$  = Sum of  $[PD \times CFM_D / 4131]$ .

where:

$PD$  = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.

$CFM_D$  = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

**TABLE C403.8.1(2)**  
**FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT**

DEVICE	ADJUSTMENT
<b>Credits</b>	
Return air or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)
Return and exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15	0.9 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2x clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition.
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream, $(2.2 \times \text{energy recovery effectiveness} - 0.5)$ inch w.c.
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream.
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.
<b>Deductions</b>	
Systems without central cooling device	- 0.6 inch w.c.
Systems without central heating device	- 0.3 inch w.c.
Systems with central electric resistance heat	- 0.2 inch w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

w.c. = water column, NC = Noise criterion.

**C403.8.3 Fan efficiency (Mandatory).** Fans shall have a fan efficiency grade (FEG) of not less than 67, as determined in accordance with AMCA 205 by an *approved*, independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The total efficiency of the fan at the design point of operation shall be within 15 percentage points of the maximum total efficiency of the fan.

**Exception:** The following fans are not required to have a fan efficiency grade:

1. Fans of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less as follows:
  - 1.1. Individual fans with a motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less, unless Exception 1.2 applies.
  - 1.2. Multiple fans in series or parallel that have a combined motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less and are operated as the functional equivalent of a single fan.
2. Fans that are part of equipment covered in Section C403.3.2.

3. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an *approved agency* for air or energy performance.
4. Powered wall/roof ventilators.
5. Fans outside the scope of AMCA 205.
6. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.

**C403.8.4 Fractional hp fan motors (Mandatory).** Motors for fans that are not less than  $\frac{1}{12}$  hp (0.062 kW) and less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent, rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. The use of belt-driven fans to sheave adjustments for airflow balancing instead of a varying motor speed shall be permitted.

**Exceptions:** The following motors are not required to comply with this section:

1. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that only provide heating to the space served.

2. Motors in space-conditioning equipment that comply with Section C403.3.2 or Sections C403.8.1. through C403.8.3.
3. Motors that comply with Section C405.7.

**C403.8.5 Fan control.** Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with Section C403.8.5.1 and as required for specific systems provided in Section C403.

**C403.8.5.1 Fan airflow control.** Each cooling system listed in Table C403.8.5.1 shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control. Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed the fan system shall draw not more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
3. Units that include an air-side economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

**Exceptions:**

1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide *ventilation air* and the indoor fan cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the *International Mechanical Code* at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined in Section C403.8.5, the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required *ventilation air*.

TABLE C403.8.5.1  
COOLING SYSTEMS

COOLING SYSTEM TYPE	FAN MOTOR SIZE	MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY
DX cooling	Any	$\geq 65,000$ Btu/h
Chilled water and evaporative cooling	$\geq \frac{1}{4}$ hp	Any

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

**C403.9 Heat rejection equipment.** Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, open-circuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

**Exception:** Heat rejection devices where energy usage is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in Tables C403.3.2(6) and C403.3.2(7).

**C403.9.1 Fan speed control.** Each fan system powered by an individual motor or array of motors with connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fans serving multiple refrigerant or fluid cooling circuits.
2. Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

**C403.9.2 Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment.** Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall be controlled to operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components and so that all fans operate at the same fan speed required for the instantaneous cooling duty, as opposed to staged on and off operation. The minimum fan speed shall be the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive system in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**C403.9.3 Limitation on centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers.** Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 1,100 gpm (4164 L/m) or greater at 95°F (35°C) condenser water return, 85°F (29°C) condenser water supply, and 75°F (24°C) outdoor air wet-bulb temperature shall meet the energy efficiency requirement for axial fan open-circuit cooling towers listed in Table C403.3.2(8).

**Exception:** Centrifugal open-circuit cooling towers that are designed with inlet or discharge ducts or require external sound attenuation.

**C403.9.4 Tower flow turndown.** Open-circuit cooling towers used on water-cooled chiller systems that are configured with multiple- or variable-speed condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all open-circuit cooling tower cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump at its minimum expected flow rate or at 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

**C403.9.5 Heat recovery for service water heating.** Condenser heat recovery shall be installed for heating or reheating of service hot water provided that the facility operates 24 hours a day, the total installed heat capacity of water-cooled systems exceeds 6,000,000 Btu/hr (1758 kW) of heat rejection, and the design service water heating load exceeds 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW).

The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of the following:

1. Sixty percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions.
2. The preheating required to raise the peak service hot water draw to 85°F (29°C).

**Exceptions:**

1. Facilities that employ condenser heat recovery for space heating or reheat purposes with a heat recovery design exceeding 30 percent of the peak water-cooled condenser load at design conditions.
2. Facilities that provide 60 percent of their service water heating from site solar or site recovered energy or from other sources.

**C403.10 Refrigeration equipment performance.** Refrigeration equipment shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of Tables C403.10.1(1) and C403.10.1(2) when tested and rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 1200. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

**C403.10.1 Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers (Mandatory).** *Refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall comply with this section. *Walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* that are neither site assembled nor site constructed shall comply with the following:

1. Be equipped with automatic door-closers that firmly close walk-in doors that have been closed to within 1 inch (25 mm) of full closure.

**Exception:** Automatic closers are not required for doors more than 45 inches (1143 mm) in width or more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height.

2. Doorways shall have strip doors, curtains, spring-hinged doors or other method of minimizing infiltration when doors are open.
3. *Walk-in coolers* and *refrigerated warehouse coolers* shall contain wall, ceiling, and door insulation of not less than R-25 and *walk-in freezers* and *refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall contain wall, ceiling and door insulation of not less than R-32.

**Exception:** Glazed portions of doors or structural members need not be insulated.

4. *Walk-in freezers* shall contain floor insulation of not less than R-28.
5. Transparent reach-in doors for *walk-in freezers* and windows in *walk-in freezer* doors shall be of triple-pane glass, either filled with inert gas or with heat-reflective treated glass.
6. Windows and transparent reach-in doors for *walk-in coolers* shall be of double-pane or triple-pane, inert gas-filled, heat-reflective treated glass.

7. Evaporator fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) and less than 460 volts shall use electronically commutated motors, brushless direct-current motors, or 3-phase motors.

8. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.

9. Where antisweat heaters without antisweat heater controls are provided, they shall have a total door rail, glass and frame heater power draw of not more than 7.1 W/ft<sup>2</sup> (76 W/m<sup>2</sup>) of door opening for *walk-in freezers* and 3.0 W/ft<sup>2</sup> (32 W/m<sup>2</sup>) of door opening for *walk-in coolers*.

10. Where antisweat heater controls are provided, they shall reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.

11. Lights in *walk-in coolers*, *walk-in freezers*, *refrigerated warehouse coolers* and *refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall either use light sources with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt, including ballast losses, or shall use light sources with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt, including ballast losses, in conjunction with a device that turns off the lights within 15 minutes when the space is not occupied.

**C403.10.2 Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers (Mandatory).** Site-assembled or site-constructed *walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall comply with the following:

1. Automatic door closers shall be provided that fully close walk-in doors that have been closed to within 1 inch (25 mm) of full closure.

**Exception:** Closers are not required for doors more than 45 inches (1143 mm) in width or more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height.

2. Doorways shall be provided with strip doors, curtains, spring-hinged doors or other method of minimizing infiltration when the doors are open.
3. Walls shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-25, ceilings shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-25 and doors of *walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-32.

**Exception:** Insulation is not required for glazed portions of doors or at structural members associated with the walls, ceiling or door frame.

4. The floor of *walk-in freezers* shall be provided with insulation having a thermal resistance of not less than R-28.
5. Transparent reach-in doors for and windows in opaque *walk-in freezer* doors shall be provided with triple-pane glass having the interstitial spaces

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C403.10.1(1)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATION**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	APPLICATION	ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh per day) <sup>a</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
Refrigerator with solid doors	Holding Temperature	$0.10 \times V + 2.04$	AHRI 1200
Refrigerator with transparent doors		$0.12 \times V + 3.34$	
Freezers with solid doors		$0.40 \times V + 1.38$	
Freezers with transparent doors		$0.75 \times V + 4.10$	
Refrigerators/freezers with solid doors		the greater of $0.12 \times V + 3.34$ or 0.70	
Commercial refrigerators	Pulldown	$0.126 \times V + 3.51$	

a. V = volume of the chiller or frozen compartment as defined in AHAM-HRF-1.

**TABLE C403.10.1(2)**  
**MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS**

Equipment Class <sup>c</sup>	EQUIPMENT TYPE			ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh/day) <sup>a, b</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
VOP.RC.M	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.82 \times TDA + 4.07$	AHRI 1200
SVO.RC.M	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.83 \times TDA + 3.18$	
HZO.RC.M	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.35 \times TDA + 2.88$	
VOP.RC.L	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Low	$2.27 \times TDA + 6.85$	
HZO.RC.L	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Low	$0.57 \times TDA + 6.88$	
VCT.RC.M	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.22 \times TDA + 1.95$	
VCT.RC.L	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Low	$0.56 \times TDA + 2.61$	
SOC.RC.M	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.51 \times TDA + 0.11$	
VOP.SC.M	Vertical open	Self-contained	Medium	$1.74 \times TDA + 4.71$	
SVO.SC.M	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Medium	$1.73 \times TDA + 4.59$	
HZO.SC.M	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Medium	$0.77 \times TDA + 5.55$	
HZO.SC.L	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Low	$1.92 \times TDA + 7.08$	
VCT.SC.I	Vertical transparent door	Self-contained	Ice cream	$0.67 \times TDA + 3.29$	
VCS.SC.I	Vertical solid door	Self-contained	Ice cream	$0.38 \times V + 0.88$	
HCT.SC.I	Horizontal transparent door	Self-contained	Ice cream	$0.56 \times TDA + 0.43$	
SVO.RC.L	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Low	$2.27 \times TDA + 6.85$	
VOP.RC.I	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$2.89 \times TDA + 8.7$	
SVO.RC.I	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$2.89 \times TDA + 8.7$	
HZO.RC.I	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.72 \times TDA + 8.74$	
VCT.RC.I	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.66 \times TDA + 3.05$	
HCT.RC.M	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.16 \times TDA + 0.13$	

*(continued)*

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

TABLE C403.10.1(2)—continued  
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS

EQUIPMENT TYPE				ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh/day) <sup>a,b</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
Equipment Class <sup>c</sup>	Family Code	Operating Mode	Rating Temperature		
HCT.RC.L	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Low	$0.34 \times \text{TDA} + 0.26$	AHRI 1200
HCT.RC.I	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.4 \times \text{TDA} + 0.31$	
VCS.RC.M	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.11 \times V + 0.26$	
VCS.RC.L	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Low	$0.23 \times V + 0.54$	
VCS.RC.I	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.27 \times V + 0.63$	
HCS.RC.M	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Medium	$0.11 \times V + 0.26$	
HCS.RC.L	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Low	$0.23 \times V + 0.54$	
HCS.RC.I	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.27 \times V + 0.63$	
HCS.RC.I	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$0.27 \times V + 0.63$	
SOC.RC.L	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Low	$1.08 \times \text{TDA} + 0.22$	
SOC.RC.I	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Ice cream	$1.26 \times \text{TDA} + 0.26$	
VOP.SC.L	Vertical open	Self-contained	Low	$4.37 \times \text{TDA} + 11.82$	
VOP.SC.I	Vertical open	Self-contained	Ice cream	$5.55 \times \text{TDA} + 15.02$	
SVO.SC.L	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Low	$4.34 \times \text{TDA} + 11.51$	
SVO.SC.I	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Ice cream	$5.52 \times \text{TDA} + 14.63$	
HZO.SC.I	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Ice cream	$2.44 \times \text{TDA} + 9.0$	
SOC.SC.I	Service over counter	Self-contained	Ice cream	$1.76 \times \text{TDA} + 0.36$	
HCS.SC.I	Horizontal solid door	Self-contained	Ice cream	$0.38 \times V + 0.88$	

a. V = Volume of the case, as measured in accordance with Appendix C of AHRI 1200.

b. TDA = Total display area of the case, as measured in accordance with Appendix D of AHRI 1200.

c. Equipment class designations consist of a combination [in sequential order separated by periods (AAA).(BB).(C)] of:

(AAA) An equipment family code where:

VOP = vertical open

SVO = semivertical open

HZO = horizontal open

HCT = horizontal transparent doors

HCS = horizontal solid doors

SOC = service over counter

(BB) An operating mode code:

RC = remote condensing

SC = self-contained

(C) A rating temperature code:

M = medium temperature (38°F)

L = low temperature (0°F)

I = ice-cream temperature (15°F)

For example, "VOP.RC.M" refers to the "vertical-open, remote-condensing, medium-temperature" equipment class.

filled with inert gas or provided with heat-reflective treated glass.

6. Transparent reach-in doors for and windows in opaque *walk-in cooler* doors shall be double-pane heat-reflective treated glass having the interstitial space gas filled.

7. Evaporator fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) and less than 460 volts shall be electronically commutated motors or 3-phase motors.

8. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) in capacity shall be of the electroni-

cally commutated or permanent split capacitor-type or shall be 3-phase motors.

**Exception:** Fan motors in *walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* combined in a single enclosure greater than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) in floor area are exempt.

9. Antisweat heaters that are not provided with antisweat heater controls shall have a total door rail, glass and frame heater power draw not greater than  $7.1 \text{ W/ft}^2$  ( $76 \text{ W/m}^2$ ) of door opening for *walk-in freezers*, and not greater than  $3.0 \text{ W/ft}^2$  ( $32 \text{ W/m}^2$ ) of door opening for *walk-in coolers*.
10. Antisweat heater controls shall be configured to reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.
11. Light sources shall have an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per Watt, including any ballast losses, or shall be provided with a device that automatically turns off the lights within 15 minutes of when the *walk-in cooler* or *walk-in freezer* was last occupied.

**C403.10.2.1 Performance standards (Mandatory).** Effective January 1, 2020, *walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall meet the requirements of Tables C403.10.2.1(1), C403.10.2.1(2) and C403.10.2.1(3).

**C403.10.3 Refrigerated display cases (Mandatory).** Site-assembled or site-constructed refrigerated display cases shall comply with the following:

1. Lighting and glass doors in refrigerated display cases shall be controlled by one of the following:

- 1.1. Time-switch controls to turn off lights during nonbusiness hours. Timed overrides for display cases shall turn the lights on for up to 1 hour and shall automatically time out to turn the lights off.
- 1.2. Motion sensor controls on each display case section that reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent within 3 minutes after the area within the sensor range is vacated.
2. Low-temperature display cases shall incorporate temperature-based defrost termination control with a time-limit default. The defrost cycle shall terminate first on an upper temperature limit breach and second upon a time limit breach.
3. Antisweat heater controls shall reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.

**C403.10.4 Refrigeration systems.** Refrigerated display cases, *walk-in coolers* or *walk-in freezers* that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a condensing unit, shall comply with Sections C403.10.4.1 and C403.10.4.2.

**Exception:** Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and super-critical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

**TABLE C403.10.2.1(1)**  
**WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER DISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS<sup>a</sup>**

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day) <sup>a</sup>
Display door, medium temperature	DD, M	$0.04 \times A_{dd} + 0.41$
Display door, low temperature	DD, L	$0.15 \times A_{dd} + 0.29$

a.  $A_{dd}$  is the surface area of the display door.

**TABLE C403.10.2.1(2)**  
**WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER NONDISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS<sup>a</sup>**

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day) <sup>a</sup>
Passage door, medium temperature	PD, M	$0.05 \times A_{nd} + 1.7$
Passage door, low temperature	PD, L	$0.14 \times A_{nd} + 4.8$
Freight door, medium temperature	FD, M	$0.04 \times A_{nd} + 1.9$
Freight door, low temperature	FD, L	$0.12 \times A_{nd} + 5.6$

a.  $A_{nd}$  is the surface area of the nondisplay door.

**TABLE C403.10.2.1(3)**  
**WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER REFRIGERATION SYSTEM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MINIMUM ANNUAL WALK-IN ENERGY FACTOR AWEF (Btu/W·h)
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, indoor system	DC.M.I	5.61
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, indoor system, > 9,000 Btu/h capacity	DC.M.I, > 9,000	5.61
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, outdoor system	DC.M.I	7.60
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, outdoor system, > 9,000 Btu/h capacity	DC.M.I, > 9,000	7.60

**C403.10.4.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems.** Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design *saturated condensing temperatures* for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for *low-temperature refrigeration systems*, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for *medium temperature refrigeration systems* where the *saturated condensing temperature* for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.
2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.
3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air- or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:
  - 3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.
  - 3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wet-bulb temperature.
4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.
5. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

**C403.10.4.2 Compressor systems.** Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

**Exception:** Controls are not required for the following:

1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.
2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that

comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low-temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The sub-cooled liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature setpoint of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate compressor suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.
  - 2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with Table C403.11.3.
3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

**C403.11 Construction of HVAC system elements (Mandatory).** Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with Sections C403.11.1 through C403.11.3.1.

**C403.11.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing (Mandatory).** Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with not less than R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces and where located outside the building with not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones 1 through 4* and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zones 5 through 8*. Where located within a building envelope assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones 1 through 4* and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zones 5 through 8*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where located within equipment.
2. Where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the duct or plenum is not greater than 15°F (8°C).

Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

**C403.11.2 Duct construction (Mandatory).** Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

**C403.11.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems (Mandatory).** Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mas-

tic-plus-embedded-fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

**Exception:** Locking-type longitudinal joints and seams, other than the snap-lock and button-lock types, need not be sealed as specified in this section.

**C403.11.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems (Mandatory).** Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) but less than 3 inches w.g. (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.11.1. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

**C403.11.2.3 High-pressure duct systems (Mandatory).** Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.11.1. In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of air leakage (CL) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

$$CL = F/P^{0.65}$$

(Equation 4-8)

where:

*F* = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet of duct surface.

*P* = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished by the designer demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

**C403.11.3 Piping insulation (Mandatory).** Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and AHRI 840, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).

**C403.11.3.1 Protection of piping insulation (Mandatory).** Piping insulation exposed to the weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sun-

TABLE C403.11.3  
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS (in inches)<sup>a,c</sup>

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY		NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	Conductivity Btu • in./(h • ft <sup>2</sup> • °F) <sup>b</sup>	Mean Rating Temperature, °F	< 1	1 to < 1½	1½ to < 4	4 to < 8	≥ 8
> 350	0.32 – 0.34	250	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
251 – 350	0.29 – 0.32	200	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
201 – 250	0.27 – 0.30	150	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
141 – 200	0.25 – 0.29	125	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
105 – 140	0.21 – 0.28	100	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
40 – 60	0.21 – 0.27	75	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
< 40	0.20 – 0.26	50	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

a. For piping smaller than 1½ inches and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b) but not to a thickness less than 1 inch.

b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:

$$T = r [(1 + t/r)^{K/k} - 1]$$

where:

*T* = minimum insulation thickness,

*r* = actual outside radius of pipe,

*t* = insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size,

*K* = conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu • in/h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F) and

*k* = the upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by 1½ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b) but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch.

light, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind, and shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be permitted.

**C403.12 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope (Mandatory).** Mechanical systems providing heat outside of the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with Sections C403.12.1 through C403.12.3.

**C403.12.1 Heating outside a building.** Systems installed to provide heat outside a building shall be radiant systems.

Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically de-energized when occupants are not present.

**C403.12.2 Snow- and ice-melt system controls.** Snow- and ice-melting systems shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C).

**C403.12.3 Freeze protection system controls.** Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

## SECTION C404

### SERVICE WATER HEATING (MANDATORY)

**C404.1 General.** This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

**C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency.** Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of Table C404.2. The efficiency shall be verified through data furnished by the manufacturer of the equipment or through certification under an *approved* certification program. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of Table C404.2.

**C404.2.1 High input service water-heating systems.** Gas-fired water-heating equipment installed in new buildings shall be in compliance with this section. Where a singular piece of water-heating equipment serves the entire building and the input rating of the equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, such equipment shall have a thermal efficiency,  $E_t$ , of not less than 90 percent. Where multiple pieces of water-heating equipment serve the building and the combined input rating of the water-heating equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, the combined input-capacity-weighted-average thermal efficiency,  $E_t$ , shall be not less than 90 percent.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual *service water-heating* requirement is provided by *on-*

*site renewable energy* or *site-recovered energy*, the minimum thermal efficiency requirements of this section shall not apply.

2. The input rating of water heaters installed in individual dwelling units shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of *service water-heating* equipment for a building.
3. The input rating of water heaters with an input rating of not greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of *service water-heating* equipment for a building.

**C404.3 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks.** Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at those inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.

**C404.4 Insulation of piping.** Piping from a water heater to the termination of the heated water fixture supply pipe shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3. On both the inlet and outlet piping of a storage water heater or heated water storage tank, the piping to a heat trap or the first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping, whichever is less, shall be insulated. Piping that is heat traced shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.11.3 or the heat trace manufacturer's instructions. Tubular pipe insulation shall be installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's instructions. Pipe insulation shall be continuous except where the piping passes through a framing member. The minimum insulation thickness requirements of this section shall not supersede any greater insulation thickness requirements necessary for the protection of piping from freezing temperatures or the protection of personnel against external surface temperatures on the insulation.

**Exception:** Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. The tubing from the connection at the termination of the fixture supply piping to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance.
2. Valves, pumps, strainers and threaded unions in piping that is 1 inch (25 mm) or less in nominal diameter.
3. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
4. Cold-water piping of a demand recirculation water system.
5. Tubing from a hot drinking-water heating unit to the water outlet.
6. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
7. Piping surrounded by building insulation with a thermal resistance ( $R$ -value) of not less than R-3.

**C404.5 Heated water supply piping.** Heated water supply piping shall be in accordance with Section C404.5.1 or C404.5.2. The flow rate through  $1/4$ -inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate

**TABLE C404.2**  
**MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (input)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED <sup>a, b</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
Water heaters, electric	$\leq 12 \text{ kW}^d$	Tabletop <sup>e</sup> , $\geq 20$ gallons and $\leq 120$ gallons	0.93 - 0.00132V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		Resistance $\geq 20$ gallons and $\leq 55$ gallons	0.960 - 0.0003V, EF	
		Grid-enabled <sup>f</sup> $> 75$ gallons and $\leq 120$ gallons	1.061 - 0.00168V, EF	
	$> 12 \text{ kW}$	Resistance	$(0.3 + 27/V_m)$ , %/h	ANSI Z21.10.3
	$\leq 24$ amps and $\leq 250$ volts	Heat pump $> 55$ gallons and $\leq 120$ gallons	2.057 - 0.00113V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Storage water heaters, gas	$\leq 75,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 20$ gallons and $\leq 55$ gallons	0.675 - 0.0015V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		$> 55$ gallons and $\leq 100$ gallons	0.8012 - 0.00078V, EF	
	$> 75,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $\leq 155,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$< 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$	$80\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	ANSI Z21.10.3
	$> 155,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$< 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$	$80\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	
Instantaneous water heaters, gas	$> 50,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $< 200,000 \text{ Btu/h}^c$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $< 2 \text{ gal}$	0.82 - 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	$\geq 200,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $< 10 \text{ gal}$	$80\% E_t$	ANSI Z21.10.3
	$\geq 200,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $\geq 10 \text{ gal}$	$80\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	
Storage water heaters, oil	$\leq 105,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 20 \text{ gal}$ and $\leq 50 \text{ gallons}$	0.68 - 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	$\geq 105,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$< 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$	$80\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	ANSI Z21.10.3
Instantaneous water heaters, oil	$\leq 210,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $< 2 \text{ gal}$	0.59 - 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	$> 210,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $< 10 \text{ gal}$	$80\% E_t$	ANSI Z21.10.3
	$> 210,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $\geq 10 \text{ gal}$	$78\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	
Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil	$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $< 12,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $< 10 \text{ gal}$	$80\% E_t$	ANSI Z21.10.3
Hot water supply boilers, gas	$\geq 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $< 12,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$\geq 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $\geq 10 \text{ gal}$	$80\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	
Hot water supply boilers, oil	$> 300,000 \text{ Btu/h}$ and $< 12,500,000 \text{ Btu/h}$	$> 4,000 \text{ Btu/h/gal}$ and $> 10 \text{ gal}$	$78\% E_t$ $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})SL, \text{Btu/h}$	
Pool heaters, gas and oil	All	—	$82\% E_t$	ASHRAE 146

*(continued)*

**TABLE C404.2—continued**  
**MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (input)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED <sup>a, b</sup>	TEST PROCEDURE
Heat pump pool heaters	All	—	4.0 COP	AHRI 1160
Unfired storage tanks	All	—	Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h • ft <sup>2</sup> • °F)/Btu	(none)

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

- a. Energy factor (EF) and thermal efficiency (E<sub>t</sub>) are minimum requirements. In the EF equation, V is the rated volume in gallons.
- b. Standby loss (SL) is the maximum Btu/h based on a nominal 70°F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. In the SL equation, Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. In the equations for electric water heaters, V is the rated volume in gallons and V<sub>m</sub> is the measured volume in gallons. In the SL equation for oil and gas water heaters and boilers, V is the rated volume in gallons.
- c. Instantaneous water heaters with input rates below 200,000 Btu/h shall comply with these requirements where the water heater is designed to heat water to temperatures 180°F or higher.
- d. Electric water heaters with an input rating of 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h) or less that are designed to heat water to temperatures of 180°F or greater shall comply with the requirements for electric water heaters that have an input rating greater than 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h).
- e. A tabletop water heater is a water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than 3 feet in height.
- f. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric resistance water heater that meets all of the following:
  - 1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons.
  - 2. Was manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
  - 3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
  - 4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:
    - 4.1. Is made of material not adversely affected by water.
    - 4.2. Is attached by means of nonwater-soluble adhesive.
    - 4.3. Advises purchasers and end users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: “**IMPORTANT INFORMATION:** This water heater is intended only for use as part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product.”

through  $\frac{5}{16}$ -inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m).

**C404.5.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method.** The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in Table C404.5.1.

1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the “Public lavatory faucets” column in Table C404.5.1.
2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the “Other fixtures and appliances” column in Table C404.5.1.

**C404.5.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method.** The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with Section C404.5.2.1. Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered to be sources of heated water.

The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:

1. For a public lavatory faucet: not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).
2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances; not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).

**C404.5.2.1 Water volume determination.** The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the “Volume” column in Table C404.5.1. The volume contained within fixture shutoff valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.

**C404.6 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems.** Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.2. Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.3. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with *access*. Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

**C404.6.1 Circulation systems.** Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy. The controls shall automatically turn off the pump

TABLE C404.5.1  
PIPING VOLUME AND MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTHS

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	VOLUME (liquid ounces per foot length)	MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTH (feet)	
		Public lavatory faucets	Other fixtures and appliances
1/4	0.33	6	50
5/16	0.5	4	50
3/8	0.75	3	50
1/2	1.5	2	43
5/8	2	1	32
3/4	3	0.5	21
7/8	4	0.5	16
1	5	0.5	13
1 1/4	8	0.5	8
1 1/2	11	0.5	6
2 or larger	18	0.5	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 gallon = 128 ounces.

when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is not a demand for hot water.

**C404.6.2 Heat trace systems.** Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is not a demand for hot water.

**C404.6.3 Controls for hot water storage.** The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

**C404.7 Demand recirculation controls.** Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold-water piping to not greater than 104°F (40°C).

**C404.8 Drain water heat recovery units.** Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Potable water-side pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For *Group R* occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with CSA B55.1.

**C404.9 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of pools and perma-

gent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections C404.9.1 through C404.9.3.

**C404.9.1 Heaters.** The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater in a location with *ready access*. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

**C404.9.2 Time switches.** Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

**C404.9.3 Covers.** Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover or other *approved* vapor-retardant means.

**Exception:** Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operating season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from site-recovered energy such as from a heat pump or on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

**C404.10 Energy consumption of portable spas (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

**SECTION C405****ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS**

**C405.1 General (Mandatory).** This section covers lighting system controls, the maximum lighting power for interior and exterior applications and electrical energy consumption.

*Dwelling units* within multifamily buildings shall comply with Section R404.1. All other *dwelling units* shall comply with Section R404.1, or with Sections C405.2.4 and C405.3. *Sleeping units* shall comply with Section C405.2.4, and with Section R404.1 or C405.3. Lighting installed in walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with the lighting requirements of Section C403.10.1 or C403.10.2.

**C405.2 Lighting controls (Mandatory).** Lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with one of the following.

1. Lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.6.
2. Luminaire level lighting controls (LLLC) and lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1, C405.2.4 and C405.2.5. The LLLC luminaire shall be independently capable of:
  - 2.1. Monitoring occupant activity to brighten or dim lighting when occupied or unoccupied, respectively.
  - 2.2. Monitoring ambient light, both electric light and daylight, and brighten or dim artificial light to maintain desired light level.
  - 2.3. For each control strategy, configuration and reconfiguration of performance parameters including; bright and dim setpoints, timeouts, dimming fade rates, sensor sensitivity adjustments, and wireless zoning configurations.

**Exceptions:** Lighting controls are not required for the following:

1. Areas designated as security or emergency areas that are required to be continuously lighted.
2. Interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways.
3. Emergency egress lighting that is normally off.

**C405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls.** Occupant *sensor controls* shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
3. Copy/print rooms.
4. Lounges/breakrooms.
5. Enclosed offices.
6. Open plan office areas.
7. Restrooms.
8. Storage rooms.
9. Locker rooms.
10. Other spaces 300 square feet ( $28 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less that are enclosed by floor-to-ceiling height partitions.
11. Warehouse storage areas.

**C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function.** Occupant sensor controls in warehouses shall comply with Section C405.2.1.2. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with Section C405.2.1.3. Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces specified in Section C405.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. They shall automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. They shall be manual on or controlled to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50-percent power.

**Exception:** Full automatic-on controls shall be permitted to control lighting in public corridors, stairways, restrooms, primary building entrance areas and lobbies, and areas where manual-on operation would endanger the safety or security of the room or building occupants.

3. They shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn off lights.

**C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouses.** In warehouses, the lighting in aisleways and open areas shall be controlled with occupant sensors that automatically reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensors shall control lighting in each aisleway independently and shall not control lighting beyond the aisleway being controlled by the sensor.

**C405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas.** Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet ( $28 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1. Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting can be controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet ( $55 \text{ m}^2$ ) within the open plan office space.
2. The controls shall automatically turn off general lighting in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.
3. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting power in each control zone is reduced by not less than 80 percent of the full zone general lighting power in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving that control zone. Control functions that switch control zone lights completely off when the zone is vacant meet this requirement.
4. The controls shall be configured such that any daylight responsive control will activate open plan office space general lighting or control zone general lighting only when occupancy for the same area is detected.

**C405.2.2 Time-switch controls.** Each area of the building that is not provided with *occupant sensor controls* com-

plying with Section C405.2.1.1 shall be provided with *time-switch controls* complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

**Exception:** Where a *manual control* provides light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2, *time-switch controls* shall not be required for the following:

1. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
2. Spaces where an automatic shutoff would endanger occupant safety or security.
3. Lighting intended for continuous operation.
4. Shop and laboratory classrooms.

**C405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function.** Each space provided with *time-switch controls* shall be provided with a *manual control* for light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2. Time-switch *controls* shall include an override switching device that complies with the following:

1. Have a minimum 7-day clock.
2. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. Incorporate an automatic holiday "shutoff" feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for not fewer than 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.
4. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for not fewer than 10 hours, if power is interrupted.
5. Include an override switch that complies with the following:
  - 5.1. The override switch shall be a manual control.
  - 5.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.
  - 5.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exceptions:**

1. Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities and sports arenas:
  - 1.1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the switch is a captive key device.
  - 1.2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet ( $1860\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. Where provided with *manual control*, the following areas are not required to have light reduction control:
  - 2.1. Spaces that have only one luminaire with a rated power of less than 100 watts.

2.2. Spaces that use less than 0.6 watts per square foot ( $6.5\text{ W/m}^2$ ).

2.3. Corridors, lobbies, electrical rooms and or mechanical rooms.

**C405.2.2.2 Light-reduction controls.** Spaces required to have light-reduction controls shall have a *manual control* that allows the occupant to reduce the connected lighting load in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern by not less than 50 percent. Lighting reduction shall be achieved by one of the following or another *approved* method:

1. Controlling all lamps or luminaires.
2. Dual switching of alternate rows of luminaires, alternate luminaires or alternate lamps.
3. Switching the middle lamp luminaires independently of the outer lamps.
4. Switching each luminaire or each lamp.

**Exception:** Light reduction controls are not required in *daylight zones* with *daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.3.

**C405.2.3 Daylight-responsive controls.** *Daylight-responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.3.1 shall be provided to control the electric lights within *daylight zones* in the following spaces:

1. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of *general lighting* within sidelit zones complying with Section C405.2.3.2. *General lighting* does not include lighting that is required to have specific application control in accordance with Section C405.2.4.
2. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of *general lighting* within toplit zones complying with Section C405.2.3.3.

**Exceptions:** Daylight responsive controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.
2. Lighting that is required to have specific application control in accordance with Section C405.2.4.
3. Sidelit zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies.
4. New buildings where the total connected lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the adjusted interior lighting power allowance ( $LPA_{adj}$ ) calculated in accordance with Equation 4-9:

$$LPA_{adj} = [LPA_{norm} \times (1.0 - 0.4 \times UDFZ / TBFA)]$$

(Equation 4-9)

where:

$LPA_{adj}$  = Adjusted building interior lighting power allowance in watts.

$LPA_{norm}$  = Normal building lighting power allowance in watts calculated in

accordance with Section C405.3.2 and reduced in accordance with Section C406.3 where Option 2 of Section C406.1 is used to comply with the requirements of Section C406.

**UDZFA** = Uncontrolled daylight zone floor area is the sum of all sidelit and toplit zones, calculated in accordance with Sections C405.2.3.2 and C405.2.3.3, that do not have daylight responsive controls.

**TBFA** = Total building floor area is the sum of all floor areas included in the lighting power allowance calculation in Section C405.3.2.

#### **C405.2.3.1 Daylight-responsive control function.**

Where required, *daylight-responsive controls* shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in *toplitz* zones in accordance with Section C405.2.3.3 shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.3.2.
2. *Daylight responsive controls* within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.
3. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with *ready access*.
4. Where located in offices, classrooms, laboratories and library reading rooms, *daylight responsive controls* shall dim lights continuously from full light output to 15 percent of full light output or lower.
5. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights.
6. Lights in *sidelit zones* in accordance with Section C405.2.3.2 facing different cardinal orientations [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of due north, east, south, west] shall be controlled independently of each other.

**Exception:** Up to 150 watts of lighting in each space is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.

**C405.2.3.2 Sidelit zone.** The sidelit zone is the floor area adjacent to vertical *fenestration* that complies with all of the following:

1. Where the fenestration is located in a wall, the sidelit zone shall extend laterally to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 2 feet (610 mm), whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.3.2.

2. The area of the fenestration is not less than 24 square feet ( $2.23 \text{ m}^2$ ).

3. The distance from the fenestration to any building or geological formation that would block access to daylight is greater than the height from the bottom of the fenestration to the top of the building or geologic formation.

4. The visible transmittance of the fenestration is not less than 0.20.

**C405.2.3.3 Toplit zone.** The *toplitz* zone is the floor area underneath a roof fenestration assembly that complies with all of the following:

1. The *toplitz* zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof fenestration assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.3.3(1).
2. Where the fenestration is located in a rooftop monitor, the *toplitz* zone shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figures C405.2.3.3(2) and C405.2.3.3(3).
3. Direct sunlight is not blocked from hitting the roof fenestration assembly at the peak solar angle on the summer solstice by buildings or geological formations.
4. The product of the visible transmittance of the roof fenestration assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof fenestration assembly divided by the area of the *toplitz* zone is not less than 0.008.

**C405.2.4 Specific application controls.** Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1. In addition, a manual control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the general lighting in the space:
  - 1.1. Display and accent.
  - 1.2. Lighting in display cases.
  - 1.3. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
  - 1.4. Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.
2. *Sleeping units* shall have control devices or systems that are configured to automatically switch off all

permanently installed luminaires and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by card key controls.
2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
3. Permanently installed luminaires within *dwelling units* shall be provided with controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or C405.2.2.2.
4. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a time switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1 that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.

**C405.2.5 Manual controls.** Where required by this code, manual controls for lights shall comply with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with *ready access* to occupants.

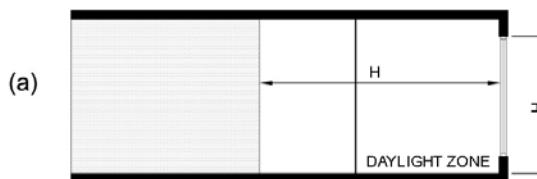
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.

**C405.2.6 Exterior lighting controls.** Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.6.1 through C405.2.6.4. Decorative lighting systems shall comply with Sections C405.2.6.1, C405.2.6.2 and C405.2.6.4.

**Exceptions:**

1. Lighting for covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures where required for eye adaptation.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

**C405.2.6.1 Daylight shutoff.** Lights shall be automatically turned off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.



(a) Section view  
(b) Plan view of daylight zone under a rooftop monitor

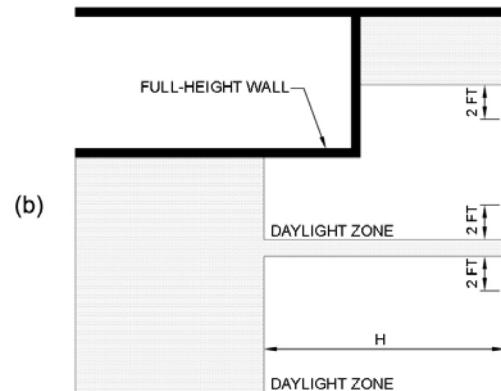
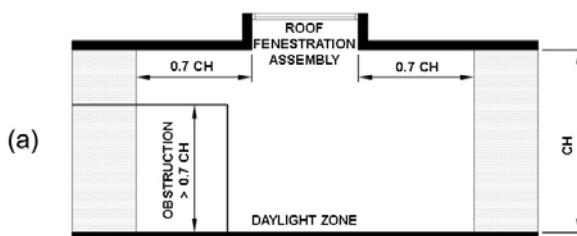


FIGURE C405.2.3.2  
SIDELIT ZONE



(a) Section view  
(b) Plan view of daylight zone under a roof fenestration assembly

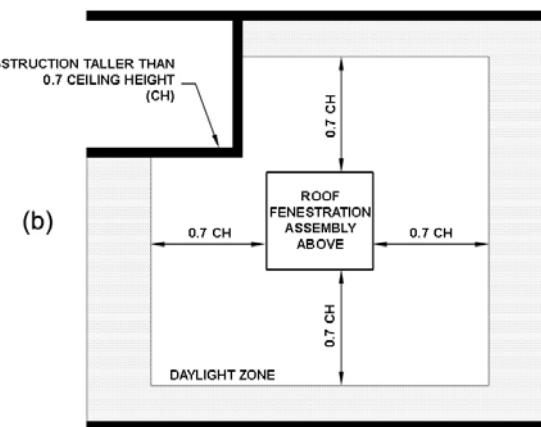


FIGURE C405.2.3.3(1)  
TOPLIT ZONE

**C405.2.6.2 Decorative lighting shutoff.** Building facade and landscape lighting shall automatically shut off from not later than 1 hour after business closing to not earlier than 1 hour before business opening.

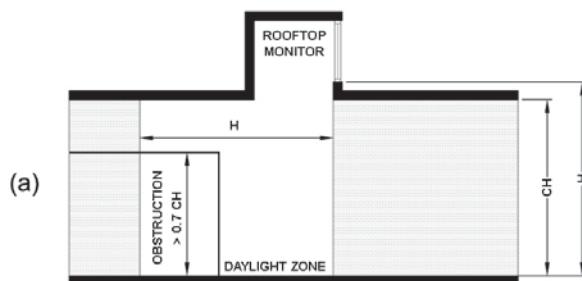
**C405.2.6.3 Lighting setback.** Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.6.2 shall be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:

1. From not later than midnight to not earlier than 6 a.m.
2. From not later than one hour after business closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening.
3. During any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more.

**C405.2.6.4 Exterior time-switch control function.** Time-switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an automatic holiday setback feature.
4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of not less than 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

**C405.3 Interior lighting power requirements (Prescriptive).** A building complies with this section where its total connected interior lighting power calculated under Section



(a) Section view  
 (b) Plan view of daylight zone under a rooftop monitor

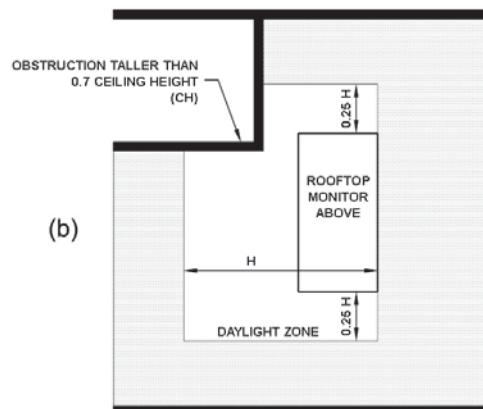
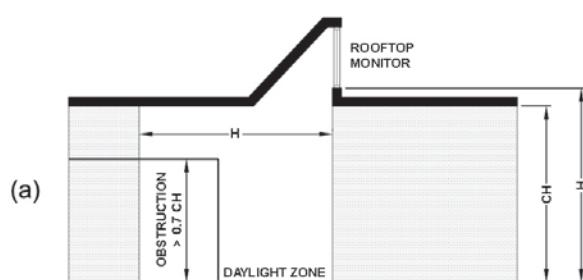


FIGURE C405.2.3.3(2)  
 DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP MONITOR



(a) Section view  
 (b) Plan view of daylight zone under a rooftop monitor

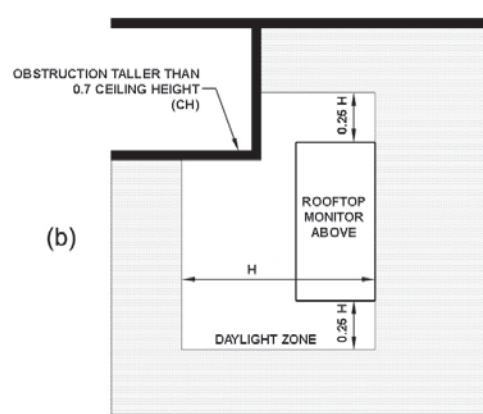


FIGURE C405.2.3.3(3)  
 DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A SLOPED ROOFTOP MONITOR

C405.3.1 is not greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under Section C405.3.2.

**C405.3.1 Total connected interior lighting power.** The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-10.

$$TCLP = [LVL + BLL + LED + TRK + \text{Other}] \quad (\text{Equation 4-10})$$

where:

**TCLP** = Total connected lighting power (watts).

**LVL** = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to building power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp.

**BLL** = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating that lamp.

**LED** = For light-emitting diode luminaires with either integral or remote drivers, the rated wattage of the luminaire.

**TRK** = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor, and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:

1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 8 W per linear foot (25 W/lin m).
2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.
3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

**Other** = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.

1. Television broadcast lighting for playing areas in sports arenas.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.
3. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
4. Casino gaming areas.
5. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.
6. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.
7. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.

8. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.

9. Lighting for photographic processes.

10. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.

11. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.

12. Advertising signage or directional signage.

13. Lighting for food warming.

14. Lighting equipment that is for sale.

15. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.

16. Lighting approved because of safety considerations.

17. Lighting in retail display windows, provided that the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.

18. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.

19. Exit signs.

**C405.3.2 Interior lighting power allowance.** The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) is determined according to Table C405.3.2(1) using the Building Area Method, or Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method, for all areas of the building covered in this permit.

**C405.3.2.1 Building Area Method.** For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.3.2(1) times the value from Table C405.3.2(1) for that area. For the purposes of this method, an “area” shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type, as listed in Table C405.3.2(1). Where this method is used to calculate the total interior lighting power for an entire building, each building area type shall be treated as a separate area.

**C405.3.2.2 Space-by-Space Method.** For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is determined by multiplying the floor area of each space times the value for the space type in Table C405.3.2(2) that most closely represents the proposed use of the space, and then summing the lighting power allowances for all spaces. Tradeoffs among spaces are permitted.

**C405.3.2.2.1 Additional interior lighting power.** Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and automatically controlled separately from the general lighting, to be turned off during nonbusiness hours. This additional power shall be used only for the specified luminaires and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase

**TABLE C405.3.2(1)**  
**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:**  
**BUILDING AREA METHOD**

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (w/ft <sup>2</sup> )
Automotive facility	0.71
Convention center	0.76
Courthouse	0.90
Dining: bar lounge/leisure	0.90
Dining: cafeteria/fast food	0.79
Dining: family	0.78
Dormitory <sup>a, b</sup>	0.61
Exercise center	0.65
Fire station <sup>a</sup>	0.53
Gymnasium	0.68
Health care clinic	0.82
Hospital <sup>a</sup>	1.05
Hotel/Motel <sup>a, b</sup>	0.75
Library	0.78
Manufacturing facility	0.90
Motion picture theater	0.83
Multifamily <sup>c</sup>	0.68
Museum	1.06
Office	0.79
Parking garage	0.15
Penitentiary	0.75
Performing arts theater	1.18
Police station	0.80
Post office	0.67
Religious building	0.94
Retail	1.06
School/university	0.81
Sports arena	0.87
Town hall	0.80
Transportation	0.61
Warehouse	0.48
Workshop	0.90

- a. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.
- b. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.
- c. Dwelling units are excluded. Neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

**TABLE C405.3.2(2)**  
**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:**  
**SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD**

COMMON SPACE TYPES <sup>a</sup>	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Atrium	
Less than 40 feet in height	0.03 per foot in total height
Greater than 40 feet in height	0.40 + 0.02 per foot in total height
Audience seating area	
In an auditorium	0.63
In a convention center	0.82
In a gymnasium	0.65
In a motion picture theater	1.14
In a penitentiary	0.28
In a performing arts theater	2.03
In a religious building	1.53
In a sports arena	0.43
Otherwise	0.43
Banking activity area	0.86
Breakroom (See Lounge/breakroom)	
Classroom/lecture hall/training room	
In a penitentiary	1.34
Otherwise	0.96
Computer room	1.33
Conference/meeting/multipurpose room	1.07
Copy/print room	0.56
Corridor	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff) <sup>b</sup>	0.92
In a hospital	0.92
In a manufacturing facility	0.29
Otherwise	0.66
Courtroom	1.39
Dining area	
In bar/lounge or leisure dining	0.93
In cafeteria or fast food dining	0.63
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff) <sup>b</sup>	2.00
In family dining	0.71
In a penitentiary	0.96
Otherwise	0.63
Electrical/mechanical room	0.43
Emergency vehicle garage	0.41

*(continued)*

**TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued**  
**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:**  
**SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD**

COMMON SPACE TYPES <sup>a</sup>	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Food preparation area	1.06
Guestroom <sup>c, d</sup>	0.77
Laboratory	
In or as a classroom	1.20
Otherwise	1.45
Laundry/washing area	0.43
Loading dock, interior	0.58
Lobby	
For an elevator	0.68
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff) <sup>b</sup>	2.03
In a hotel	1.06
In a motion picture theater	0.45
In a performing arts theater	1.70
Otherwise	1.0
Locker room	0.48
Lounge/breakroom	
In a healthcare facility	0.78
Otherwise	0.62
Office	
Enclosed	0.93
Open plan	0.81
Parking area, interior	0.14
Pharmacy area	1.34
Restroom	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff) <sup>b</sup>	0.96
Otherwise	0.85
Sales area	1.22
Seating area, general	0.42
Stairway (see Space containing stairway)	
Stairwell	0.58
Storage room	0.46
Vehicular maintenance area	0.56
Workshop	1.14
BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES <sup>a</sup>	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance area)	
Convention Center—exhibit space	0.88
Dormitory—living quarters <sup>c, d</sup>	0.54
Facility for the visually impaired <sup>b</sup>	
In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)	1.06
In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)	1.80
Fire Station—sleeping quarters <sup>c</sup>	0.20
Gymnasium/fitness center	
In an exercise area	0.50
In a playing area	0.82

(continued)

**TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued**  
**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:**  
**SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD**

BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES <sup>a</sup>	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Healthcare facility	
In an exam/treatment room	1.68
In an imaging room	1.06
In a medical supply room	0.54
In a nursery	1.00
In a nurse's station	0.81
In an operating room	2.17
In a patient room <sup>c</sup>	0.62
In a physical therapy room	0.84
In a recovery room	1.03
Library	
In a reading area	0.82
In the stacks	1.20
Manufacturing facility	
In a detailed manufacturing area	0.93
In an equipment room	0.65
In an extra-high-bay area (greater than 50' floor-to-ceiling height)	1.05
In a high-bay area (25-50' floor-to-ceiling height)	0.75
In a low-bay area (less than 25' floor-to-ceiling height)	0.96
Museum	
In a general exhibition area	1.05
In a restoration room	0.85
Performing arts theater—dressing room	0.36
Post office—sorting area	0.68
Religious buildings	
In a fellowship hall	0.55
In a worship/pulpit/choir area	1.53
Retail facilities	
In a dressing/fitting room	0.50
In a mall concourse	0.90
Sports arena—playing area	
For a Class I facility <sup>e</sup>	2.47
For a Class II facility <sup>f</sup>	1.96
For a Class III facility <sup>g</sup>	1.70
For a Class IV facility <sup>h</sup>	1.13

(continued)

**TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued**  
**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:**  
**SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD**

BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES <sup>a</sup>	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Transportation facility	
In a baggage/carousel area	0.45
In an airport concourse	0.31
At a terminal ticket counter	0.62
Warehouse—storage area	
For medium to bulky, palletized items	0.35
For smaller, hand-carried items	0.69

- a. In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply
- b. A 'Facility for the Visually Impaired' is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.
- c. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.
- d. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.
- e. Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semiprofessional, collegiate, or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.
- f. Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semiprofessional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating for between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high-school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.
- g. Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high-school facilities with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.
- h. Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high-school facilities without provision for spectators.

in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted in the following cases:

1. For lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise, the additional lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-11.

Additional interior lighting power allowance =  $1000 \text{ W} + (\text{Retail Area 1} \times 0.45 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 2} \times 0.45 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 3} \times 1.05 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 4} \times 1.87 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2)$

For SI units:

Additional interior lighting power allowance =  $1000 \text{ W} + (\text{Retail Area 1} \times 4.8 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 2} \times 4.84 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 3} \times 11 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 4} \times 20 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2)$

**(Equation 4-11)**

where:

*Retail Area 1* = The floor area for all products not listed in Retail Area 2, 3 or 4.

*Retail Area 2* = The floor area used for the sale of vehicles, sporting goods and small electronics.

*Retail Area 3* = The floor area used for the sale of furniture, clothing, cosmetics and artwork.

*Retail Area 4* = The floor area used for the sale of jewelry, crystal and china.

**Exception:** Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast, or other critical display is approved by the code official.

2. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to the general lighting for the purpose of decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, provided that the additional lighting power shall be not more than  $0.9 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2$  ( $9.7 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ ) in lobbies and not more than  $0.75 \text{ W}/\text{ft}^2$  ( $8.1 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ ) in other spaces.

**C405.4 Exterior lighting power requirements (Mandatory).** The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.1 shall be not greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.2.

**C405.4.1 Total connected exterior building exterior lighting power.** The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building.

**Exception:** Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included.

1. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal business operation.
3. Exit signs.
4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.
5. Advertising signage or directional signage.
6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by its manufacturer.
7. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
8. Athletic playing areas.
9. Temporary lighting.
10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
12. Used to highlight features of art, public monuments, and the national flag.
13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
14. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units, where the lighting complies with Section R404.1.

**C405.4.2 Exterior lighting power allowance.** The total exterior lighting power allowance is the sum of the base site allowance plus the individual allowances for areas that are to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building. Lighting power allowances are as specified in Table C405.4.2(2). The lighting zone for the building exterior is determined in accordance with Table C405.4.2(1) unless otherwise specified by the *code official*.

TABLE C405.4.2(1)  
EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

LIGHTING ZONE	DESCRIPTION
1	Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas
2	Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed-use areas
3	All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4
4	High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority

**C405.4.2.1 Additional exterior lighting power.** Any increase in the exterior lighting power allowance is limited to the specific lighting applications indicated in Table C405.4.2(3). The additional power shall be used only for the luminaires that are serving these applications and shall not be used for any other purpose.

**C405.4.3 Gas lighting (Mandatory).** Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems.

**C405.5 Dwelling electrical meter (Mandatory).** Each dwelling unit located in a *Group R-2* building shall have a separate electrical meter.

**C405.6 Electrical transformers (Mandatory).** Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Table C405.6 as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the transformer manufacturer.

**Exceptions:** The following transformers are exempt:

1. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions based on the DOE 10 CFR 431 definition of special purpose applications.
2. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions that are not to be used in general purpose applications based on information provided in DOE 10 CFR 431.
3. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions with multiple voltage taps where the highest tap is not less than 20 percent more than the lowest tap.

4. Drive transformers.
5. Rectifier transformers.
6. Auto-transformers.
7. Uninterruptible power system transformers.
8. Impedance transformers.
9. Regulating transformers.
10. Sealed and nonventilating transformers.
11. Machine tool transformers.
12. Welding transformers.
13. Grounding transformers.
14. Testing transformers.

**C405.7 Electric motors (Mandatory).** Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C405.7(1) through C405.7(4) when tested and rated in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

**Exception:** The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors:

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.

**C405.8 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment.** Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

**C405.8.1 Elevator cabs.** For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. Ventilation fans in elevators that do not have their own air-conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize ventilation fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

**C405.8.2 Escalators and moving walks.** Escalators and moving walks shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and shall have automatic controls configured to reduce speed to the minimum permitted speed in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 or applicable local code when not conveying passengers.

**Exception:** A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions is an alternative to the reduced speed function.

**C405.8.2.1 Regenerative drive.** An escalator designed either for one-way down operation only or for reversible operation shall have a variable frequency regenerative drive that supplies electrical energy to the building electrical system when the escalator is loaded with passengers whose combined weight exceeds 750 pounds (340 kg).

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C405.4.2(2)**  
**LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS**

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Base Site Allowance	350 W	400 W	500 W	900 W
<b>Uncovered Parking Areas</b>				
Parking areas and drives	0.03 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.04 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.06 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.08 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Building Grounds</b>				
Walkways and ramps less than 10 feet wide	0.5 W/linear foot	0.5 W/linear foot	0.6 W/linear foot	0.7 W/linear foot
Walkways and ramps 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas, special feature areas	0.10 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.10 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.11 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.14 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Dining areas	0.65 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.65 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.75 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.95 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Stairways	0.6 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.7 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.7 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.7 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Pedestrian tunnels	0.12 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.12 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.14 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.21 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Landscaping	0.03 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.04 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.04 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.04 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Building Entrances and Exits</b>				
Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exits	14 W/linear foot of opening	14 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening
Entry canopies	0.20 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.25 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.4 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.4 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Loading docks	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Sales Canopies</b>				
Free-standing and attached	0.40 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.40 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.6 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.7 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Outdoor Sales</b>				
Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)	0.20 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.20 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.50 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to "open area" allowance	No allowance	7 W/linear foot	7 W/linear foot	21 W/linear foot

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

W = watts.

**TABLE C405.4.2(3)**  
**INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS**

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Building facades	No allowance	0.075 W/ft <sup>2</sup> of gross above-grade wall area	0.113 W/ft <sup>2</sup> of gross above-grade wall area	0.15 W/ft <sup>2</sup> of gross above-grade wall area
Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories	135 W per location plus 45 W per additional ATM per location			
Uncovered entrances and gatehouse inspection stations at guarded facilities	0.5 W/ft <sup>2</sup> of area			
Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles	0.35 W/ft <sup>2</sup> of area			
Drive-up windows and doors	200 W per drive through			
Parking near 24-hour retail entrances.	400 W per main entry			

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

W = watts.

**TABLE C405.6**  
**MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR 10 CFR 431 LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS**

SINGLE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS		THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS	
kVA <sup>a</sup>	Efficiency (%) <sup>b</sup>	kVA <sup>a</sup>	Efficiency (%) <sup>b</sup>
15	97.70	15	97.89
25	98.00	30	98.23
37.5	98.20	45	98.40
50	98.30	75	98.60
75	98.50	112.5	98.74
100	98.60	150	98.83
167	98.70	225	98.94
250	98.80	300	99.02
333	98.90	500	99.14
—	—	750	99.23
—	—	1000	99.28

a. kiloVolt-Amp rating.

b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431 test procedure for low-voltage dry-type transformers.

**C405.9 Voltage drop in feeders and branch circuits.** The total *voltage drop* across the combination of feeders and branch circuits shall not exceed 5 percent.

## SECTION C406 ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY PACKAGES

**C406.1 Requirements.** Buildings shall comply with one or more of the following:

1. More efficient HVAC performance in accordance with Section C406.2.
2. Reduced lighting power in accordance with Section C406.3.
3. Enhanced lighting controls in accordance with Section C406.4.
4. On-site supply of renewable energy in accordance with Section C406.5.
5. Provision of a dedicated outdoor air system for certain HVAC equipment in accordance with Section C406.6.
6. High-efficiency service water heating in accordance with Section C406.7.
7. Enhanced envelope performance in accordance with Section C406.8.
8. Reduced air infiltration in accordance with Section C406.9

**C406.1.1 Tenant spaces.** Tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.2, C406.3, C406.4, C406.6 or C406.7. Alternatively, tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.5 where the entire building is in compliance.

**Exception:** Previously occupied tenant spaces that comply with this code in accordance with Section C501.

**C406.2 More efficient HVAC equipment performance.** Equipment shall exceed the minimum efficiency require-

ments listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(7) by 10 percent, in addition to the requirements of Section C403. Where multiple performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed all requirements by 10 percent. *Variable refrigerant flow systems* shall exceed the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 by 10 percent. Equipment not listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(7) shall be limited to 10 percent of the total building system capacity.

**C406.3 Reduced lighting power.** The total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 shall be less than 90 percent of the total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.

**C406.4 Enhanced digital lighting controls.** Interior lighting in the building shall have the following enhanced lighting controls that shall be located, scheduled and operated in accordance with Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.3.

1. Luminaires shall be configured for continuous dimming.
2. Luminaires shall be addressed individually. Where individual addressability is not available for the luminaire class type, a controlled group of not more than four luminaires shall be allowed.
3. Not more than eight luminaires shall be controlled together in a *daylight zone*.
4. Fixtures shall be controlled through a digital control system that includes the following function:
  - 4.1. Control reconfiguration based on digital addressability.
  - 4.2. Load shedding.
  - 4.3. Individual user control of overhead general illumination in open offices.
  - 4.4. Occupancy sensors shall be capable of being reconfigured through the digital control system.

## COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**TABLE C405.7(1)**  
**MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN A, NEMA DESIGN B,  
AND IEC DESIGN N MOTORS (EXCLUDING FIRE PUMP) ELECTRIC MOTORS AT 60 Hz<sup>a,b</sup>**

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016							
	2 Pole		4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	77.0	77.0	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	84.0	84.0	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	85.5	85.5	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	86.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	89.5	88.5	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	91.0	90.2	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	91.0	91.0	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	91.7	91.7	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	91.7	91.7	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	92.4	92.4	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	93.0	93.0	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	93.6	93.6	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	93.6	93.6	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	94.1	93.6	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.0	94.1	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	95.4	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1
250 (186)	95.8	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.0	95.0
300 (224)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8		
350 (261)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8		
400 (298)	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8				
450 (336)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2				
500 (373)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2				

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

**TABLE C405.7(2)**  
**MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN C AND IEC DESIGN H MOTORS AT 60 HZ<sup>a, b</sup>**

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016					
	4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

**TABLE C405.7(3)**  
**MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY POLYPHASE SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS<sup>a</sup>**

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS		
	Number of Poles	2	4
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800
0.25		65.6	69.5
0.33		69.5	73.4
0.50		73.4	78.2
0.75		76.8	81.1
1		77.0	83.5
1.5		84.0	86.5
2		85.5	86.5
3		85.5	86.9

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

**TABLE C405.7(4)**  
**MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR**  
**CAPACITOR-START CAPACITOR-RUN AND CAPACITOR-START INDUCTION-RUN SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS<sup>a</sup>**

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25		66.6	68.5	62.2
0.33		70.5	72.4	66.6
0.50		72.4	76.2	76.2
0.75		76.2	81.8	80.2
1		80.4	82.6	81.1
1.5		81.5	83.8	N/A
2		82.9	84.5	N/A
3		84.1	N/A	N/A

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

5. Construction documents shall include submittal of a Sequence of Operations, including a specification outlining each of the functions in Item 4.
6. Functional testing of lighting controls shall comply with Section C408.

**C406.5 On-site renewable energy.** The total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems shall be one of the following:

1. Not less than 1.71 Btu/h per square foot (5.4 W/m<sup>2</sup>) or 0.50 watts per square foot (5.4 W/m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area.
2. Not less than 3 percent of the energy used within the building for building mechanical and service water heating equipment and lighting regulated in Chapter 4.

**C406.6 Dedicated outdoor air system.** Buildings containing equipment or systems regulated by Section C403.3.4, C403.4.3, C403.4.4, C403.4.5, C403.6, C403.8.4, C403.8.5, C403.8.5.1, C403.9.1, C403.9.2, C403.9.3 or C403.9.4 shall be equipped with an independent ventilation system designed to provide not less than the minimum 100-percent outdoor air to each individual occupied space, as specified by the *International Mechanical Code*. The ventilation system shall be capable of total energy recovery. The HVAC system shall include supply-air temperature controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperatures. The controls shall reset the supply-air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room-air temperature.

**C406.7 Reduced energy use in service water heating.** Buildings shall be of the following types to use this compliance method:

1. *Group R-1:* Boarding houses, hotels or motels.
2. *Group I-2:* Hospitals, psychiatric hospitals and nursing homes.
3. *Group A-2:* Restaurants and banquet halls or buildings containing food preparation areas.
4. *Group F:* Laundries.

5. *Group R-2.*
6. *Group A-3:* Health clubs and spas.
7. Buildings showing a service hot water load of 10 percent or more of total building energy loads, as shown with an energy analysis as described in Section C407.

**C406.7.1 Load fraction.** The building service water-heating system shall have one or more of the following that are sized to provide not less than 60 percent of the building's annual hot water requirements, or sized to provide 100 percent of the building's annual hot water requirements if the building shall otherwise comply with Section C403.9.5:

1. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heat-recovery chillers, building equipment, or process equipment.

*2. On-site renewable energy water-heating systems.*

**C406.8 Enhanced envelope performance.** The total UA of the building thermal envelope as designed shall be not less than 15 percent below the total UA of the building thermal envelope in accordance with Section C402.1.5.

**C406.9 Reduced air infiltration.** Air infiltration shall be verified by whole-building pressurization testing conducted in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 by an independent third party. The measured air-leakage rate of the building envelope shall not exceed 0.25 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (2.0 L/s × m<sup>2</sup>) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inches water column (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade building envelope. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner.

**Exception:** For buildings having over 250,000 square feet (25 000 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area, air leakage testing need not be conducted on the whole building where testing is conducted on representative above-grade sections of the building. Tested areas shall total not less than 25 percent of the conditioned floor area and shall be tested in accordance with this section.

## SECTION C407 TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

**C407.1 Scope.** This section establishes criteria for compliance using total building performance. The following systems and loads shall be included in determining the total building performance: heating systems, cooling systems, service water heating, fan systems, lighting power, receptacle loads and process loads.

**Exception:** Energy used to recharge or refuel vehicles that are used for on-road and off-site transportation purposes.

**C407.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires compliance with Sections C402.5, C403.2, C403.3 through C403.3.2, C403.4 through C403.4.2.3, C403.5.5, C403.7, C403.8.1 through C403.8.4, C403.10.1 through C403.10.3, C403.11, C403.12, C404 and C405.

**C407.3 Performance-based compliance.** Compliance based on total building performance requires that a proposed building (*proposed design*) be shown to have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's *State Energy Price and Expenditure Report*. *Code officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations. The reduction in energy cost of the proposed design associated with *on-site renewable energy* shall be not more than 5 percent of the total energy cost. The amount of renewable energy purchased from off-site sources shall be the same in the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.

**Exception:** Jurisdictions that require site energy (1 kWh = 3413 Btu) rather than energy cost as the metric of comparison.

**C407.4 Documentation.** Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official*.

**C407.4.1 Compliance report.** Permit submittals shall include a report documenting that the proposed design has annual energy costs less than or equal to the annual energy costs of the *standard reference design*. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address of the building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as specified in Table C407.5.1(1). The inspection checklist shall show the estimated annual energy cost for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

**C407.4.2 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.
2. Thermal zoning diagrams consisting of floor plans showing the thermal zoning scheme for *standard reference design* and *proposed design*.
3. Input and output reports from the energy analysis simulation program containing the complete input and output files, as applicable. The output file shall include energy use totals and energy use by energy source and end-use served, total hours that space conditioning loads are not met and any errors or warning messages generated by the simulation tool as applicable.
4. An explanation of any error or warning messages appearing in the simulation tool output.
5. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in Table C407.5.1(1).
6. Documentation of the reduction in energy use associated with *on-site renewable energy*.

**C407.5 Calculation procedure.** Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

**C407.5.1 Building specifications.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table C407.5.1(1). Table C407.5.1(1) shall include by reference all notes contained in Table C402.1.4.

**C407.5.2 Thermal blocks.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be analyzed using identical thermal blocks as specified in Section C407.5.2.1, C407.5.2.2 or C407.5.2.3.

**C407.5.2.1 HVAC zones designed.** Where HVAC zones are defined on HVAC design drawings, each HVAC zone shall be modeled as a separate thermal block.

**Exception:** Different HVAC zones shall be allowed to be combined to create a single thermal block or identical thermal blocks to which multipliers are applied, provided that:

1. The space use classification is the same throughout the thermal block.
2. All HVAC zones in the thermal block that are adjacent to glazed exterior walls face the same orientation or their orientations are within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of each other.
3. All of the zones are served by the same HVAC system or by the same kind of HVAC system.

**C407.5.2.2 HVAC zones not designed.** Where HVAC zones have not yet been designed, thermal blocks shall be defined based on similar internal load densities, occupancy, lighting, thermal and temperature schedules, and in combination with the following guidelines:

1. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for interior and perimeter spaces. Interior spaces shall be those located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an exterior wall. Perimeter spaces shall be those located closer than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an exterior wall.
2. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces adjacent to glazed exterior walls: a separate zone shall be provided for each orientation, except orientations that differ by not more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) shall be permitted to be considered to be the same orientation. Each zone shall include floor area that is 15 feet (4572 mm) or less from a glazed perimeter wall, except that floor area within 15 feet (4572 mm) of glazed perimeter walls having more than one orientation shall be divided proportionately between zones.
3. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having floors that are in contact with the ground or exposed to ambient conditions from zones that do not share these features.
4. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having exterior ceiling or roof assemblies from zones that do not share these features.

**C407.5.2.3 Group R-2 occupancy buildings.** Group R-2 occupancy spaces shall be modeled using one thermal block per space except that those facing the same orientations are permitted to be combined into one thermal block. Corner units and units with roof or floor loads shall only be combined with units sharing these features.

**C407.6 Calculation software tools.** Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities.

1. Building operation for a full calendar year (8,760 hours).
2. Climate data for a full calendar year (8,760 hours) and shall reflect *approved* coincident hourly data for temperature, solar radiation, humidity and wind speed for the building location.
3. Ten or more thermal zones.
4. Thermal mass effects.

5. Hourly variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, thermostat settings, mechanical ventilation, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads.

6. Part-load performance curves for mechanical equipment.
7. Capacity and efficiency correction curves for mechanical heating and cooling equipment.
8. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table C407.5.1(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings including, but not limited to, *R*-value, *U*-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER, EF.

**C407.6.1 Specific approval.** Performance analysis tools complying with the applicable subsections of Section C407 and tested according to ASHRAE Standard 140 shall be permitted to be *approved*. Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve tools for a specified application or limited scope.

**C407.6.2 Input values.** Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

**C407.6.3 Exceptional calculation methods.** Where the simulation program does not model a design, material or device of the *proposed design*, an exceptional calculation method shall be used where approved by the *code official*. Where there are multiple designs, materials or devices that the simulation program does not model, each shall be calculated separately and exceptional savings determined for each. The total exceptional savings shall not constitute more than half of the difference between the baseline building performance and the proposed building performance. Applications for approval of an exceptional method shall include all of the following:

1. Step-by-step documentation of the exceptional calculation method performed, detailed enough to reproduce the results.
2. Copies of all spreadsheets used to perform the calculations.
3. A sensitivity analysis of energy consumption where each of the input parameters is varied from half to double the value assumed.
4. The calculations shall be performed on a time step basis consistent with the simulation program used.
5. The performance rating calculated with and without the exceptional calculation method.

**TABLE C407.5.1(1)**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS**

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Space use classification	Same as proposed	The space use classification shall be chosen in accordance with Table C405.5.2 for all areas of the building covered by this permit. Where the space use classification for a building is not known, the building shall be categorized as an office building.
Roofs	Type: Insulation entirely above deck	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance: 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90	As proposed
Walls, above-grade	Type: Mass wall where proposed wall is mass; otherwise steel-framed wall	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance: 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90	As proposed
Walls, below-grade	Type: Mass wall	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-Factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4 with insulation layer on interior side of walls	As proposed
Floors, above-grade	Type: joist/framed floor	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Floors, slab-on-grade	Type: Unheated	As proposed
	F-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Opaque doors	Type: Swinging	As proposed
	Area: Same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Area	
	1. The proposed vertical fenestration area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is less than 40 percent of above-grade wall area.	
	2. 40 percent of above-grade wall area; where the proposed vertical fenestration area is 40 percent or more of the above-grade wall area.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.4	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table C402.4 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used	As proposed
Skylights	External shading and PF: None	As proposed
	Area	
	1. The proposed skylight area; where the proposed skylight area is less than that permitted by Section C402.1.	
	2. The area permitted by Section C402.1; where the proposed skylight area exceeds that permitted by Section C402.1	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.4	As proposed
Lighting, interior	SHGC: as specified in Table C402.4 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used.	As proposed
	The interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Section C405.3.2. Where the occupancy of the building is not known, the lighting power density shall be 1.0 Watt per square foot (10.7 W/m <sup>2</sup> ) based on the categorization of buildings with unknown space classification as offices.	As proposed
	The lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Table C405.4.2(2) and C405.4.2(3). Areas and dimensions of surfaces shall be the same as proposed.	As proposed

*(continued)*

**TABLE C407.5.1(1)—continued**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS**

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Internal gains	Same as proposed	Receptacle, motor and process loads shall be modeled and estimated based on the space use classification. End-use load components within and associated with the building shall be modeled to include, but not be limited to, the following: exhaust fans, parking garage ventilation fans, exterior building lighting, swimming pool heaters and pumps, elevators, escalators, refrigeration equipment and cooking equipment.
Schedules	Same as proposed <b>Exception:</b> Thermostat settings and schedules for HVAC systems that utilize radiant heating, radiant cooling and elevated air speed, provided that equivalent levels of occupant thermal comfort are demonstrated by means of equal Standard Effective Temperature as calculated in Normative Appendix B of ASHRAE Standard 55.	Operating schedules shall include hourly profiles for daily operation and shall account for variations between weekdays, weekends, holidays and any seasonal operation. Schedules shall model the time-dependent variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, thermostat settings, mechanical ventilation, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads. The schedules shall be typical of the proposed building type as determined by the designer and approved by the jurisdiction.
Mechanical ventilation	Same as proposed	As proposed, in accordance with Section C403.2.2.
Heating systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type <sup>a</sup> : as specified in Tables C407.5.1(2) and C407.5.1(3)	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in Tables C403.3.2(4) and C403.3.2(5)	As proposed
	Capacity <sup>b</sup> : sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet heating load hours and no larger heating capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed
Cooling systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type <sup>c</sup> : as specified in Tables C407.5.1(2) and C407.5.1(3)	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in Tables C403.3.2(1), C403.3.2(2) and C403.3.2(3)	As proposed
	Capacity <sup>b</sup> : sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet cooling load hours and no larger cooling capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed
	Economizer <sup>d</sup> : same as proposed, in accordance with Section C403.5.	As proposed
Service water heating <sup>e</sup>	Fuel type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in Table C404.2	For <i>Group R</i> , as proposed multiplied by SWHF. For other than <i>Group R</i> , as proposed multiplied by efficiency as provided by the manufacturer of the DWHR unit.
	Capacity: same as proposed	As proposed
	Where no service water hot water system exists or is specified in the proposed design, no service hot water heating shall be modeled.	

SWHF = Service water heat recovery factor. DWHR = Drain water heat recovery.

- a. Where no heating system exists or has been specified, the heating system shall be modeled as fossil fuel. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.
- b. The ratio between the capacities used in the annual simulations and the capacities determined by sizing runs shall be the same for both the standard reference design and proposed design.
- c. Where no cooling system exists or no cooling system has been specified, the cooling system shall be modeled as an air-cooled single-zone system, one unit per thermal zone. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.
- d. If an economizer is required in accordance with Table C403.5(1) and where no economizer exists or is specified in the proposed design, then a supply-air economizer shall be provided in the standard reference design in accordance with Section C403.5.
- e. The SWHF shall be applied as follows:
  1. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than one shower and not greater than two showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then  $SWHF = [1 - (DWHR \text{ unit efficiency} \cdot 0.36)]$ .
  2. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than three showers and not greater than four showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then  $SWHF = [1 - (DWHR \text{ unit efficiency} \cdot 0.33)]$ .
  3. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than five showers and not greater than six showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit, then  $SWHF = [1 - (DWHR \text{ unit efficiency} \cdot 0.26)]$ .
  4. Where Items 1 through 3 are not met,  $SWHF = 1.0$ .

**TABLE C407.5.1(2)**  
**HVAC SYSTEMS MAP**

CONDENSER COOLING SOURCE <sup>a</sup>	HEATING SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION <sup>b</sup>	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVAC SYSTEM TYPE <sup>c</sup>		
		Single-zone Residential System	Single-zone Nonresidential System	All Other
Water/ground	Electric resistance	System 5	System 5	System 1
	Heat pump	System 6	System 6	System 6
	Fossil fuel	System 7	System 7	System 2
Air/none	Electric resistance	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Heat pump	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Fossil fuel	System 10	System 11	System 4

a. Select “water/ground” where the proposed design system condenser is water or evaporatively cooled; select “air/none” where the condenser is air cooled. Closed-circuit dry coolers shall be considered to be air cooled. Systems utilizing district cooling shall be treated as if the condenser water type were “water.” Where mechanical cooling is not specified or the mechanical cooling system in the proposed design does not require heat rejection, the system shall be treated as if the condenser water type were “Air.” For proposed designs with ground-source or groundwater-source heat pumps, the standard reference design HVAC system shall be water-source heat pump (System 6).

b. Select the path that corresponds to the proposed design heat source: electric resistance, heat pump (including air source and water source), or fuel fired. Systems utilizing district heating (steam or hot water) and systems without heating capability shall be treated as if the heating system type were “fossil fuel.” For systems with mixed fuel heating sources, the system or systems that use the secondary heating source type (the one with the smallest total installed output capacity for the spaces served by the system) shall be modeled identically in the standard reference design and the primary heating source type shall be used to determine standard reference design HVAC system type.

c. Select the standard reference design HVAC system category: The system under “single-zone residential system” shall be selected where the HVAC system in the proposed design is a single-zone system and serves a Group R occupancy. The system under “single-zone nonresidential system” shall be selected where the HVAC system in the proposed design is a single-zone system and serves other than Group R occupancy. The system under “all other” shall be selected for all other cases.

**TABLE C407.5.1(3)**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVAC SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS**

SYSTEM NO.	SYSTEM TYPE	FAN CONTROL	COOLING TYPE	HEATING TYPE
1	Variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes <sup>a</sup>	VAV <sup>d</sup>	Chilled water <sup>e</sup>	Electric resistance
2	Variable air volume with reheat <sup>b</sup>	VAV <sup>d</sup>	Chilled water <sup>e</sup>	Hot water fossil fuel boiler <sup>f</sup>
3	Packaged variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes <sup>a</sup>	VAV <sup>d</sup>	Direct expansion <sup>c</sup>	Electric resistance
4	Packaged variable air volume with reheat <sup>b</sup>	VAV <sup>d</sup>	Direct expansion <sup>c</sup>	Hot water fossil fuel boiler <sup>f</sup>
5	Two-pipe fan coil	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Chilled water <sup>e</sup>	Electric resistance
6	Water-source heat pump	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Direct expansion <sup>c</sup>	Electric heat pump and boiler <sup>g</sup>
7	Four-pipe fan coil	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Chilled water <sup>e</sup>	Hot water fossil fuel boiler <sup>f</sup>
8	Packaged terminal heat pump	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Direct expansion <sup>c</sup>	Electric heat pump <sup>h</sup>
9	Packaged rooftop heat pump	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Direct expansion <sup>c</sup>	Electric heat pump <sup>h</sup>
10	Packaged terminal air conditioner	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Direct expansion	Hot water fossil fuel boiler <sup>f</sup>
11	Packaged rooftop air conditioner	Constant volume <sup>i</sup>	Direct expansion	Fossil fuel furnace

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> = 0.4719 L/s, 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

- a. **VAV with parallel boxes:** Fans in parallel VAV fan-powered boxes shall be sized for 50 percent of the peak design flow rate and shall be modeled with 0.35 W/cfm fan power. Minimum volume setpoints for fan-powered boxes shall be equal to the minimum rate for the space required for ventilation consistent with Section C403.6.1, Item 3. Supply air temperature setpoint shall be constant at the design condition.
- b. **VAV with reheat:** Minimum volume setpoints for VAV reheat boxes shall be 0.4 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> of floor area. Supply air temperature shall be reset based on zone demand from the design temperature difference to a 10°F temperature difference under minimum load conditions. Design airflow rates shall be sized for the reset supply air temperature, i.e., a 10°F temperature difference.
- c. **Direct expansion:** The fuel type for the cooling system shall match that of the cooling system in the proposed design.
- d. **VAV:** Where the proposed design system has a supply, return or relief fan motor 25 hp or larger, the corresponding fan in the VAV system of the standard reference design shall be modeled assuming a variable-speed drive. For smaller fans, a forward-curved centrifugal fan with inlet vanes shall be modeled. Where the proposed design's system has a direct digital control system at the zone level, static pressure setpoint reset based on zone requirements in accordance with Section C403.8.5 shall be modeled.
- e. **Chilled water:** For systems using purchased chilled water, the chillers are not explicitly modeled and chilled water costs shall be based as determined in Sections C407.3 and C407.5.2. Otherwise, the standard reference design's chiller plant shall be modeled with chillers having the number as indicated in Table C407.5.1(4) as a function of standard reference building chiller plant load and type as indicated in Table C407.5.1(5) as a function of individual chiller load. Where chiller fuel source is mixed, the system in the standard reference design shall have chillers with the same fuel types and with capacities having the same proportional capacity as the proposed design's chillers for each fuel type. Chilled water supply temperature shall be modeled at 44°F design supply temperature and 56°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Chilled water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with Section C403.9.3. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no chilled water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 22 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The chilled water system shall be modeled as primary-only variable flow with flow maintained at the design rate through each chiller using a bypass. Chilled water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable-speed drives where required in Section C403.9.3. The heat rejection device shall be an axial fan cooling tower with two-speed fans where required in Section C403.9. Condenser water design supply temperature shall be 85°F or 10°F approach to design wet-bulb temperature, whichever is lower, with a design temperature rise of 10°F. The tower shall be controlled to maintain a 70°F leaving water temperature where weather permits, floating up to leaving water temperature at design conditions. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no condenser water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). Each chiller shall be modeled with separate condenser water and chilled water pumps interlocked to operate with the associated chiller.
- f. **Fossil fuel boiler:** For systems using purchased hot water or steam, the boilers are not explicitly modeled and hot water or steam costs shall be based on actual utility rates. Otherwise, the boiler plant shall use the same fuel as the proposed design and shall be natural draft. The standard reference design boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the standard reference design plant load is 600,000 Btu/h and less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Hot water supply temperature shall be modeled at 180°F design supply temperature and 130°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Hot water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with Section C403.9.3. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no hot water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The hot water system shall be modeled as primary only with continuous variable flow. Hot water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by Section C403.9.3.
- g. **Electric heat pump and boiler:** Water-source heat pumps shall be connected to a common heat pump water loop controlled to maintain temperatures between 60°F and 90°F. Heat rejection from the loop shall be provided by an axial fan closed-circuit evaporative fluid cooler with two-speed fans where required in Section C403.8.5. Heat addition to the loop shall be provided by a boiler that uses the same fuel as the proposed design and shall be natural draft. Where no boilers exist in the proposed design, the standard reference building boilers shall be fossil fuel. The standard reference design boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the standard reference design plant load is 600,000 Btu/h or less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Pump system power shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 22 W/gpm, which is equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, with a 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency. Loop flow shall be variable with flow shutoff at each heat pump when its compressor cycles off as required by Section C403.9.3. Loop pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by Section C403.9.3.
- h. **Electric heat pump:** Electric air-source heat pumps shall be modeled with electric auxiliary heat. The system shall be controlled with a multistage space thermostat and an outdoor air thermostat wired to energize auxiliary heat only on the last thermostat stage and when outdoor air temperature is less than 40°F.
- i. **Constant volume:** Fans shall be controlled in the same manner as in the proposed design; i.e., fan operation whenever the space is occupied or fan operation cycled on calls for heating and cooling. Where the fan is modeled as cycling and the fan energy is included in the energy efficiency rating of the equipment, fan energy shall not be modeled explicitly.

TABLE C407.5.1(4)  
NUMBER OF CHILLERS

TOTAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	NUMBER OF CHILLERS
≤ 300 tons	1
> 300 tons, < 600 tons	2, sized equally
≥ 600 tons	2 minimum, with chillers added so that all are sized equally and none is larger than 800 tons

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

TABLE C407.5.1(5)  
WATER CHILLER TYPES

INDIVIDUAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	ELECTRIC CHILLER TYPE	FOSSIL FUEL CHILLER TYPE
≤ 100 tons	Reciprocating	Single-effect absorption, direct fired
> 100 tons, < 300 tons	Screw	Double-effect absorption, direct fired
≥ 300 tons	Centrifugal	Double-effect absorption, direct fired

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

## SECTION C408 MAINTENANCE INFORMATION AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

**C408.1 General.** This section covers the provision of maintenance information and the commissioning of, and the functional testing requirements for, building systems.

**C408.1.1 Building operations and maintenance information.** The building operations and maintenance documents shall be provided to the owner and shall consist of manufacturers' information, specifications and recommendations; programming procedures and data points; narratives; and other means of illustrating to the owner how the building, equipment and systems are intended to be installed, maintained and operated. Required regular maintenance actions for equipment and systems shall be clearly stated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

**C408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements.** Prior to the final mechanical and plumbing inspections, the *registered design professional or approved agency* shall provide evidence of mechanical systems *commissioning* and completion in accordance with the provisions of this section.

*Construction document* notes shall clearly indicate provisions for *commissioning* and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the owner or owner's authorized agent and made available to the *code official* upon request in accordance with Sections C408.2.4 and C408.2.5.

**Exceptions:** The following systems are exempt:

1. Mechanical systems and service water heater systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 480,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW)

cooling capacity and 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.

2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.

**C408.2.1 Commissioning plan.** A *commissioning plan* shall be developed by a *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and shall include the following items:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of *commissioning*, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.
3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.
4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.
5. Measurable criteria for performance.

**C408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing.** HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the product specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

**C408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing.** Each supply air outlet and *zone* terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable-volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger.

Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.746 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

**Exception:** Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less are not required to be provided with a means for air balancing.

**C408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing.** Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

**Exception:** The following equipment is not required to be equipped with a means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.
2. Where throttling results in not greater than 5 percent of the nameplate horsepower draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

**C408.2.3 Functional performance testing.** Functional performance testing specified in Sections C408.2.3.1 through C408.2.3.3 shall be conducted.

**C408.2.3.1 Equipment.** Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems, and system-to-system interfacing relationships in accordance with approved plans and specifications such that operation, function, and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems is confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and *sequence of operation*, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions:

1. All modes as described in the *sequence of operation*.
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode.
3. Performance of alarms.
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

**Exception:** Unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(3) that do not require supply air economizers.

**C408.2.3.2 Controls.** HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications.

**C408.2.3.3 Economizers.** Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

**C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report.** A preliminary report of *commissioning* test procedures and results shall be completed and certified by the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical and service hot water findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall be identified as "Preliminary Commissioning Report," shall include the completed Commissioning Compliance Checklist, Figure C408.2.4, and shall identify:

1. Itemization of deficiencies found during testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.
4. Results of functional performance tests.
5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

**C408.2.4.1 Acceptance of report.** Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered as acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to Section C105.2.6 until the *code official* has received the Preliminary Commissioning Report from the building owner or owner's authorized agent.

**C408.2.4.2 Copy of report.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Preliminary Commissioning Report be made available for review by the *code official*.

**C408.2.5 Documentation requirements.** The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

**C408.2.5.1 System balancing report.** A written report describing the activities and measurements completed in accordance with Section C408.2.2.

**C408.2.5.2 Final commissioning report.** A report of test procedures and results identified as "Final Commissioning Report" shall be delivered to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water system findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.

3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.

**Exception:** Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

**C408.3 Functional testing of lighting controls.** Automatic lighting controls required by this code shall comply with this section.

**C408.3.1 Functional testing.** Prior to passing final inspection, the *registered design professional* shall provide evidence that the lighting control systems have been tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the *construction documents* and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with Sections C408.3.1.1 through C408.3.1.3 for the applicable control type.

**C408.3.1.1 Occupant sensor controls.** Where *occupant sensor controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Certify that the *occupant sensor* has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. For projects with seven or fewer *occupant sensors*, each sensor shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven *occupant sensors*, testing shall be done for each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry. Where multiples of each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry are provided, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one, of each combination shall be tested unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

For *occupant sensor controls* to be tested, verify the following:

- 3.1. Where *occupant sensor controls* include status indicators, verify correct operation.
- 3.2. The controlled lights turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time.
- 3.3. For auto-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space.
- 3.4. For manual-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on only when manually activated.
- 3.5. The lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

**C408.3.1.2 Time-switch controls.** Where *time-switch controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Confirm that the *time-switch control* is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.
2. Provide documentation to the owner of *time-switch controls* programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.
3. Verify the correct time and date in the time switch.
4. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.
5. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.
6. Simulate occupied condition. Verify and document the following:
  - 6.1. All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.
  - 6.2. The switch only operates lighting in the enclosed space in which the switch is located.
7. Simulate unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:
  - 7.1. Nonexempt lighting turns off.
  - 7.2. Manual override switch allows only the lights in the enclosed space where the override switch is located to turn on or remain on until the next scheduled shutoff occurs.
8. Additional testing as specified by the *registered design professional*.

**C408.3.1.3 Daylight responsive controls.** Where *daylight responsive controls* are provided, the following shall be verified:

1. Control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
2. Daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level setpoints in response to available daylight.
3. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for ready access only by authorized personnel.

**C408.3.2 Documentation requirements.** The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

**C408.3.2.1 Drawings.** Construction documents shall include the location and catalogue number of each piece of equipment.

**C408.3.2.2 Manuals.** An operating and maintenance manual shall be provided and include the following:

1. Name and address of not less than one service agency for installed equipment.

**COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

2. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended setpoints.
3. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.
4. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.
5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.

**C408.3.2.3 Report.** A report of test results shall be provided and include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.

Project Information: \_\_\_\_\_ Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Commissioning Authority: \_\_\_\_\_

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

- Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1
- Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.
- HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: \_\_\_\_\_
- HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: \_\_\_\_\_
- Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: \_\_\_\_\_
- Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: \_\_\_\_\_
- Service Water Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: \_\_\_\_\_
- Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled
- Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2018 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner's Representative \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

**FIGURE C408.2.4**  
**COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST**



# CHAPTER 5 [CE]

## EXISTING BUILDINGS

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of Chapter 4 in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.

### SECTION C501 GENERAL

**C501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy* of existing buildings and structures.

**C501.2 Existing buildings.** Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building system* lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

**C501.3 Maintenance.** *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

**C501.4 Compliance.** *Alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing *buildings* and structures shall comply with the provisions for *alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and in the *International Building Code*, *International Existing Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code*, *International Property Maintenance Code*, *International Private Sewage Disposal Code* and NFPA 70.

**C501.5 New and replacement materials.** Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs*, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow use of these materials in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

**C501.6 Historic buildings.** Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration, restoration* and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the *code official* and signed by a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority hav-

ing jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

### SECTION C502 ADDITIONS

**C502.1 General.** *Additions* to an existing *building, building system* or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building system* to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building systems*. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code if the *addition* alone complies or if the existing *building* and *addition* comply with this code as a single *building*. *Additions* shall comply with Sections C402, C403, C404, C405 and C502.2.

*Additions* complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

**C502.2 Prescriptive compliance.** *Additions* shall comply with Sections C502.2.1 through C502.2.6.2.

**C502.2.1 Vertical fenestration.** New *vertical fenestration* area that results in a total *building fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407. *Additions* with *vertical fenestration* that result in a total *building fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 or *additions* that exceed the *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the *addition* only. *Additions* that result in a total *building vertical fenestration* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.

**C502.2.2 Skylight area.** New *skylight* area that results in a total *building fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. *Additions* with *skylight* area that result in a total *building skylight* area greater than C402.4.1 or *additions* that exceed the *skylight* area shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the *addition* only. *Additions* that result in a total *building skylight* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.

**C502.2.3 Building mechanical systems.** New mechanical systems and equipment that are part of the *addition* and

## EXISTING BUILDINGS

serve the building heating, cooling and ventilation needs shall comply with Section C403.

**C502.2.4 Service water-heating systems.** New service water-heating equipment, controls and service water heating piping shall comply with Section C404.

**C502.2.5 Pools and inground permanently installed spas.** New pools and inground permanently installed spas shall comply with Section C404.10.

**C502.2.6 Lighting power and systems.** New lighting systems that are installed as part of the addition shall comply with Section C405.

**C502.2.6.1 Interior lighting power.** The total interior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section C405.3.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

**C502.2.6.2 Exterior lighting power.** The total exterior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section C405.4.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

## SECTION C503 ALTERATIONS

**C503.1 General.** *Alterations* to any *building* or structure shall comply with the requirements of Section C503 and the code for new construction. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems.

*Alterations* complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

**Exception:** The following *alterations* need not comply with the requirements for new construction, provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing *fenestration*.
2. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane *fenestration* assemblies reducing solar heat gain, provided that the code does not require the glazing or *fenestration* to be replaced.
3. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction, provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
4. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
5. *Roof recover*.
6. *Air barriers* shall not be required for *roof recover* and roof replacement where the *alterations* or ren-

vations to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.

**C503.2 Change in space conditioning.** Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

### Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

**C503.3 Building envelope.** New building envelope assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C402.1 through C402.5.

**Exception:** Where the existing building exceeds the fenestration area limitations of Section C402.4.1 prior to alteration, the building is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

**C503.3.1 Roof replacement.** *Roof replacements* shall comply with Section C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5 or C407 where the existing roof assembly is part of the *building thermal envelope* and contains insulation entirely above the roof deck.

**C503.3.2 Vertical fenestration.** The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the space adjacent to the new fenestration only. *Alterations* that result in a total building *vertical fenestration* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the vertical fenestration area is not changed, using the same vertical fenestration area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the vertical fenestration area specified in Table C407.5.1(1).

**C503.3.3 Skylight area.** New *skylight* area that results in a total building *skylight* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4 or C407. The addition of *skylight* area that results in a total building *skylight* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the space adjacent to the new skylights. *Alterations* that result in a total building *skylight* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the *skylight* area is not changed, using the same *skylight* area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an

alternative to using the skylight area specified in Table C407.5.1(1).

**C503.4 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C403.

**C503.4.1 Economizers.** New cooling systems that are part of *alteration* shall comply with Section C403.5.

**C503.5 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section C404.

**C503.6 Lighting systems.** New lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section C405.

**Exception.** *Alterations* that replace less than 10 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such *alterations* do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

## SECTION C504 REPAIRS

**C504.1 General.** Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be repaired in compliance with Section C501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section C501.3, ordinary *repairs* exempt from *permit* and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

Where a building was constructed to comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, repairs shall comply with the standard and need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

**C504.2 Application.** For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. *Roof repairs.*
3. Air barriers shall not be required for *roof repair* where the repairs to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.
4. Replacement of existing doors that separate conditioned space from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vestibule or revolving door, provided that an existing vestibule that separates a conditioned space from the exterior shall not be removed.
5. *Repairs* where only the bulb, the ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced, provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

## SECTION C505 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

**C505.1 General.** Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code. Where

the use in a space changes from one use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2) to another use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2), the installed lighting wattage shall comply with Section C405.3. Where the space undergoing a change in occupancy or use is in a building with a fenestration area that exceeds the limitations of Section C402.4.1, the space is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

### Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.



## CHAPTER 6 [CE]

# REFERENCED STANDARDS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 6 lists the full title, edition year and address of the promulgator for all standards that are referenced in the code. The section numbers in which the standards are referenced are also listed.

**This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 107.**

---

### AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association  
1827 Walden Office Square  
Suite 550  
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A C440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**

Table C402.5.2

---

### AHAM

Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers  
1111 19th Street NW, Suite 402  
Washington, DC 20036

**ANSI/AHAM RAC-1—2008: Room Air Conditioners**

Table C403.3.2(3)

**AHAM HRF-1—2016: Energy, Performance and Capacity of Household Refrigerators, Refrigerator-Freezers and Freezers**

Table C403.10.1

---

### AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating, & Refrigeration Institute  
2111 Wilson Blvd, Suite 500  
Arlington, VA 22201

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (1998 RA2014): Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance**

Table C403.3.2(2)

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2 (1998 RA2014): Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps —Testing and Rating for Performance**

Table C403.3.2(2)

**210/240—2016: Performance Rating of Unitary Air-conditioning and Air-source Heat Pump Equipment**

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2)

**310/380—2014 (CSA-C744-04): Standard for Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps**

Table C403.3.2(3)

**340/360—2015: Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment**

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2)

**365(I-P)—2009: Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning Condensing Units**

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(6)

**390 (I-P)—2015: Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-conditioners and Heat Pumps**

Table C403.3.2(3)

**400 (I-P)—2015: Performance Rating of Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers**

Table C403.3.2(10)

**440—2008: Performance Rating of Room Fan Coils—with Addendum 1**

C403.11.3

**460—2005: Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-draft Air-cooled Refrigerant Condensers**

Table C403.3.2(8)

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****AHRI—continued**

**550/590 (I-P)—2015: Performance Rating of Water-chilling and Heat Pump Water-heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle**  
C403.3.2.1, Table C403.3.2(7)

**560—00: Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages**  
Table C403.3.2(7)

**1160 (I-P)—2014: Performance Rating of Heat Pump Pool Heaters**  
Table C404.2

**1200 (I-P)—2013: Performance Rating of Commercial Refrigerated Display Merchandisers and Storage Cabinets**  
C403.10, Table C403.10.1(1), Table C403.10.1(2)

---

**AMCA**

Air Movement and Control Association International  
30 West University Drive  
Arlington Heights, IL 60004-1806

**205—12: Energy Efficiency Classification for Fans**  
C403.8.3

**220—08 (R2012): Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Curtain Units for Aerodynamic Performance Rating**  
C402.5.6

**500D—12: Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating**  
C403.7.7

---

**ANSI**

American National Standards Institute  
25 West 43rd Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10036

**Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—11: Gas Water Heaters, Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating Tank and Instantaneous**  
Table C404.2

**Z21.47/CSA 2.3—12: Gas-fired Central Furnaces**  
Table C403.3.2(4)

**Z83.8/CSA 2.6—09: Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces**  
Table C403.3.2(4)

---

**APSP**

The Association of Pool & Spa Professionals  
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 580  
Alexandria, VA 22314

**14—2014: American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency**  
C404.8

---

**ASHRAE**

ASHRAE  
1791 Tullie Circle NE  
Atlanta, GA 30329

**ASHRAE 127-2007: Method of Testing for Rating Computer**  
Table C403.3.2(9)

**ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183—2007 (RA2014): Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**  
C403.1.1

**ASHRAE—2016: ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook**  
C403.1.1

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (1998 RA2014): Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance**  
Table C403.3.2(2)

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2 (1998 RA2014): Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance**  
Table C403.3.2(2)

**ASHRAE—continued**

**55—2013: Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy**  
Table C407.5.1

**90.1—2016: Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**  
C401.2, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C406.2, Table C407.6.1, C502.1, C503.1, C504.1

**140—2014: Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Building Energy Analysis Computer Programs**  
C407.6.1

**146—2011: Testing and Rating Pool Heaters**  
Table C404.2

**ASME**

American Society of Mechanical Engineers  
Two Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016-5990

**ASME A17.1—2016/CSA B44—16: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators**  
C405.8.2

**ASTM**

ASTM International  
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

**C90—14: Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units**  
Table C401.3

**C1363—11: Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus**  
C303.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4, 402.2.7

**C1371—15: Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers**  
Table C402.3

**C1549—09(2014): Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer**  
Table C402.3

**D1003—13: Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics**  
C402.4.2.2

**E283—04(2012): Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen**  
C402.5.1.2.2, Table C402.5.2, C402.5.7

**E408—13: Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-meter Techniques**  
Table C402.3

**E779—10: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization**  
C402.5

**E903—12: Standard Test Method Solar Absorptance, Reflectance and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres (Withdrawn 2005)**  
Table C402.3

**E1677—11: Specification for Air Barrier (AB) Material or Systems for Low-rise Framed Building Walls**  
C402.5.1.2.2

**E1827—11: Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door**  
C402.5, C406.9, C606.4

**E1918—06(2015): Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal or Low-sloped Surfaces in the Field**  
Table C402.3

**E1980—11: Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-sloped Opaque Surfaces**  
Table C402.3, C402.3.2

**E2178—13: Standard Test Method for Air Permanence of Building Materials**  
C402.5.1.2.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ASTM—continued

**E2357—11: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barriers Assemblies**  
C402.5.1.2.2

**CRRC**

Cool Roof Rating Council  
449 15th Street, Suite 400  
Oakland, CA 94612

**ANSI/CRRC-S100—2016: Standard Test Methods for Determining Radiative Properties of Materials**  
Table C402.3, C402.3.1

**CSA**

CSA Group  
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road  
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**

Table C402.5.2

**CSA B55.1—2015: Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**  
C404.8

**CSA B55.2—2015: Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**  
C404.8

**CTI**

Cooling Technology Institute  
P. O. Box 681807  
Houston, TX 77268

**ATC 105 (00): Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Tower**  
Table C403.3.2(8)

**ATC 105S—11: Acceptance Test Code for Closed Circuit Cooling Towers**  
Table C403.3.2(8)

**ATC 106—11: Acceptance Test for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers**  
Table C403.3.2(8)

**STD 201—11: Standard for Certification of Water Cooling Towers Thermal Performances**  
Table C403.3.2(8)

**CTI STD 201 RS(15): Performance Rating of Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment**  
Table C403.3.2(8)

**DASMA**

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association, International  
1300 Sumner Avenue  
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

**105—2016: Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors**  
C303.1.3, Table C402.5.2

**DOE**

U.S. Department of Energy  
c/o Superintendent of Documents  
1000 Independence Avenue SW  
Washington, DC 20585

**10 CFR, Part 430—2015: Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products: Test Procedures and Certification and Enforcement Requirement for Plumbing Products; and Certification and Enforcement Requirements for Residential Appliances; Final Rule**  
Table C403.3.2(4), Table C403.3.2(5), Table C404.2

## DOE—continued

**10 CFR, Part 430, Subpart B, Appendix N—(2015): Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Furnaces and Boilers**

C202

**10 CFR, Part 431—2015: Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment: Test Procedures and Efficiency Standards; Final Rules**

Table C403.3.2(5), C405.6, Table C405.6, C405.7

**10 CFR 431 Subpart B App B: Uniform Test Method for Measuring Nominal Full Load Efficiency of Electric Motors**

C403.8.4, Table C405.7(1), Table C405.7(2), Table C405.7(3), C405.7(4)

**NAECA 87—(88): National Appliance Energy Conservation Act 1987 [Public Law 100-12 (with Amendments of 1988-P.L. 100-357)]**

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(4)

**ICC**

International Code Council, Inc.  
500 New Jersey Avenue NW  
6th Floor  
Washington, DC 20001

**IBC—18: International Building Code®**

C201.3, C303.2, C402.5.3, C501.4

**IFC—18: International Fire Code®**

C201.3, C501.4

**IFGC—18: International Fuel Gas Code®**

C201.3, C501.4

**IMC—18: International Mechanical Code®**

C403.7.7, C403.2.2, C403.7.1, C403.7.2, C403.7.4, C403.7.5, C403.11.1, C403.11.2.1, C403.11.2.2, C403.6, C403.6.6, C406.6, C501.4

**IPC—18: International Plumbing Code®**

C201.3, C501.4

**IPMC—18: International Property Maintenance Code®**

C501.4

**IPSDC—18: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®**

C501.4

**IEEE**

Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers  
3 Park Avenue, 17<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10016

**IEEE 515.1—2012: IEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications**

C404.6.2

**IES**

Illuminating Engineering Society  
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor  
New York, NY 10005-4001

**ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1—2016: Energy Standard for Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**

C401.2, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C406.2, C502.1, C503.1, C504.1

**ISO**

International Organization for Standardization  
Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401, 1214 Vernier  
Geneva, Switzerland

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1(1998 RA2014): Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps -Testing and Rating for Performance**

Table C403.3.2(2)

**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2(1998 RA2014): Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps -Testing and Rating for Performance**

C403.3.2(2)

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

**NEMA**

National Electrical Manufacturers Association  
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900  
Rosslyn, VA 22209

**MG1—2014: Motors and Generators**

C202

**NFPA**

National Fire Protection Association  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

**70—17: National Electrical Code**

C501.4

**NFRC**

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.  
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140  
Greenbelt, MD 20770

**100—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U-factors***

C303.1.3, C402.2.1.1

**200—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence**

C303.1.3, C402.4.1.1

**400—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage**

Table C402.5.2

**SMACNA**

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Inc.  
4021 Lafayette Center Drive  
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

**SMACNA—2012: HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual Second Edition**

C403.2.11.2.3

**UL**

UL LLC  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

**710—12: Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through November 2013**

C403.7.5

**727—06: Oil-fired Central Furnaces—with Revisions through October 2013**

Table C403.3.2(4)

**731—95: Oil-fired Unit Heaters—with Revisions through October 2013**

Table C403.3.2(4)

**1784—01: Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through February 2015**

C402.5.3

**US-FTC**

United States-Federal Trade Commission  
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW  
Washington, DC 20580

**CFR Title 16 (2015): *R*-value Rule**

C303.1.4

## REFERENCED STANDARDS



Window and Door Manufacturers Association  
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20036-3309

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**  
Table C402.5.2



## APPENDIX CA

# SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

#### User note:

**About this appendix:** Appendix CA is intended to encourage the installation of renewable energy systems by preparing buildings for the future installation of solar energy equipment, piping and wiring.

### SECTION CA101 SCOPE

**CA101.1 General.** These provisions shall be applicable for new construction where solar-ready provisions are required.

### SECTION CA102 GENERAL DEFINITION

**SOLAR-READY ZONE.** A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

### SECTION CA103 SOLAR-READY ZONE

**CA103.1 General.** A solar-ready zone shall be located on the roof of buildings that are five stories or less in height above grade plane, and are oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north or have low-slope roofs. Solar-ready zones shall comply with Sections CA103.2 through CA103.8.

#### Exceptions:

1. A building with a permanently installed, on-site renewable energy system.
2. A building with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.
3. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the incident solar radiation available to the building is not suitable for a solar-ready zone.
4. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the solar zone area required by Section CA103.3 cannot be met because of extensive rooftop equipment, skylights, vegetative roof areas or other obstructions.

**CA103.2 Construction document requirements for a solar-ready zone.** Construction documents shall indicate the solar-ready zone.

**CA103.3 Solar-ready zone area.** The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 40 percent of the roof area calculated as the horizontally projected gross roof area less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks, vegetative roof areas and mandatory access or set back areas as required by the *International Fire Code*. The solar-ready zone shall be a single area or smaller, separated sub-zone areas. Each sub-

zone shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width in the narrowest dimension.

**CA103.4 Obstructions.** Solar ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and roof-mounted equipment.

**CA103.5 Roof loads and documentation.** A collateral dead load of not less than 5 pounds per square foot (5 psf) (24.41 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) shall be included in the gravity and lateral design calculations for the solar-ready zone. The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**CA103.6 Interconnection pathway.** Construction documents shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or piping from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel or service hot water system.

**CA103.7 Electrical service reserved space.** The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual-pole circuit breaker for future solar electric installation and shall be labeled “For Future Solar Electric.” The reserved space shall be positioned at the end of the panel that is opposite from the panel supply conductor connection.

**CA103.8 Construction documentation certificate.** A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.



# INDEX

## A

### ACCESSIBLE

Controls . . . . . C402.2.3, C404.6, C404.9.1, C405.2.2.3, C405.2.3.1

Defined . . . . . C202

### ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY PACKAGE . . . . . C406

### ADDITIONS

Defined . . . . . C202

Historic buildings . . . . . C501.6

Requirements . . . . . C502

### ADMINISTRATION . . . . . Chapter 1

### AIR BARRIER . . . . . C402.5

Access openings . . . . . C402.5.4

Assemblies . . . . . C402.5.1.2.2

Compliance options . . . . . C402.5.1.2

Construction . . . . . C402.5.1.1

Dampers . . . . . C402.5.5, C403.7.7

Doors other than fenestration . . . . . C402.5.4

Fenestration . . . . . C402.5.2, Table C402.5.2

Materials . . . . . C402.5.1.2.1

Penetrations . . . . . C402.5.1.1

Recessed lighting . . . . . C402.5.8

Rooms with fuel burning appliances . . . . . C402.5.3

Testing . . . . . C402.5

Vestibules . . . . . C402.5.7

### AIR CONDITIONERS

Efficiency requirements . . . . . Tables C403.3.2(1, 3)

### AIR CURTAIN

Defined . . . . . C202

Vestibules . . . . . C402.5.7

### AIR ECONOMIZERS

Defined . . . . . C202

Requirements . . . . . C403.5, C403.5.1, C403.5.2,

C403.5.3, C403.5.4

### AIR INFILTRATION (see AIR BARRIER)

Defined . . . . . C202

### AIR INTAKES AND EXHAUSTS . . . . . C402.5.5,

C403.7.7

### AIR LEAKAGE—THERMAL ENVELOPE

(see AIR BARRIER)

### AIR SYSTEM BALANCING . . . . . C408.2.2.1,

C408.2.2.2, C408.2.5.3

### ALTERATIONS

Defined . . . . . C202

Historic buildings . . . . . C501.6

Replacement fenestration . . . . . C401.2.1

Requirements . . . . . C503

### ALTERNATE MATERIALS . . . . . C102

## APPROVED

Defined . . . . . C202

## APPROVED AGENCY

Defined . . . . . C202

Inspections . . . . . C105.4

## AREA-WEIGHTED U-FACTOR . . . . . C402.4.3.4

## AUTOMATIC

Defined . . . . . C202

## B

### BASEMENT WALLS (see WALL, BELOW GRADE)

Requirements . . . . . C303.2.1

### BELOW-GRADE WALLS

(see WALL, BELOW GRADE)

### BOARD OF APPEALS . . . . . C109

Limitations on authority . . . . . C109.2

Qualifications of members . . . . . C109.3

### BOILERS

Defined . . . . . C202

Requirements . . . . . Table C403.3.2(5), C403.3.4, C403.4.3, C404.2, Table C404.2

Setback controls . . . . . C403.4.1.5

Turndown controls . . . . . C403.3.4

### BUILDING

Defined . . . . . C202

Multifamily residential . . . . . C407.5.2.3

### BUILDING COMMISSIONING

Defined . . . . . C202

Requirements . . . . . C408

### BUILDING ENTRANCE

Defined . . . . . C202

Exterior lighting . . . . . Table C405.4.2(2)

Lighting controls . . . . . C405.2.1.1

Vestibules . . . . . C402.5.7

### BUILDING ENVELOPE

Compliance documentation . . . . . C103.2, C103.2.1

Defined . . . . . C202

Exemptions . . . . . C402.1.1, C402.1.2

Insulation . . . . . C303.1.1

Insulation and  
fenestration criteria . . . . . C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4

Requirements . . . . . C402

Performance method . . . . . C407.3

### BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

Air leakage and barriers . . . . . C402.5

Defined . . . . . C202

Doors . . . . . C402.4.5

Low-energy buildings.....	C402.1.1	
Performance .....	C402.1, C402.1.3,	
	C402.1.4, C402.1.5	
Rooms with fuel-burning appliances .....	C402.5.3	
Specific insulation .....	C402.2	
<b>C</b>		
<b>C-FACTOR</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Assembly <i>U</i> , <i>C</i> or <i>F</i> -factor method .....	C402.1.4,	
	Table C402.1.4	
<b>CAULKING AND WEATHERSTRIPPING</b> .....		
C402.5.1.1, C402.5.1.2.1,		
C402.5.1.2.2, C402.5.3,		
C402.5.4, C402.5.6, C402.5.8		
<b>CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY</b> .....	C501.4, C505	
<b>CHILLERS</b> .....	Table C403.3.2(7), Table C407.5.1(4)	
Positive displacement chilling packages .....	C403.3.2.2	
Water-cooled centrifugal chiller packages .....	C403.3.2.1,	
	Table C403.3.2(7), Table C407.5.1(5)	
<b>CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Requirements .....	C404.6.1, C404.6.3	
<b>CIRCULATING PUMPS</b> .....	C403.4.3.3	
<b>CIRCULATING SYSTEMS</b> .....	C403.4.3.3, C404.6	
<b>CLIMATE TYPES</b>		
Defined .....	Table C301.3(1)	
<b>CLIMATE ZONES</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Established .....	C301, Figure C301.1, Table C301.1	
By state or territory .....	Figure C301.1, Table C301.1	
International climate zones .....	C301.3, Table C301.3(1), Table C301.3(2)	
Warm humid .....	C301.2, Table C301.2, C301.3.1	
Tropical .....	C301.4	
<b>CODE OFFICIAL</b>		
Approval of alternate methods.....	C102	
Defined .....	C202	
Examination of construction documents .....	C103.3	
Inspections.....	C105	
<b>COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP)</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Requirements .....	Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(7)	
<b>COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS</b>		
Compliance .....	C101.2, C101.4.1, C101.5, C401.1, C401.2, Chapter 5	
Defined .....	C202	
Total building performance.....	C407	
<b>COMMISSIONING</b> .....		
<b>COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT</b>		
General .....	C101.5	
Existing buildings .....	C501.4	
<b>COMPRESSOR (REFRIGERATION) SYSTEMS</b> .....		
<b>COMPONENT PERFORMANCE APPROACH</b> .....		
<b>COMPUTER ROOM</b>		
Air conditioning.....	Table C403.3.2(9)	
Defined .....	C202	
<b>CONDENSING UNITS</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Efficiency requirements .....	Tables C403.3.2(1, 6)	
<b>CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Renewable energy .....	C406.5	
<b>CONDITIONED SPACE</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Change from nonconditioned or low energy .....	C503.2	
Roof solar reflectance .....	C402.3	
Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.....	C402.5.3	
<b>CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS</b> .....		
Amended .....	C103.4	
Approval.....	C103.3.1	
Examination .....	C103.3	
Information required .....	C103.2	
Phased approvals .....	C103.3.3	
Previous approvals.....	C103.3.2	
Retention .....	C103.5	
Revocation .....	C105.7.1	
<b>CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Required.....	C402.5.1	
<b>CONTINUOUS INSULATION</b>		
Defined .....	C202	
Requirements.....	C303.2.2, C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3, C402.2.2, C402.2.3	
<b>CONTROLS</b>		
Capabilities .....	C403, C403.3.1, C403.4.1, C403.4.1.2, C403.4.2.1, C403.4.2.2, C403.4.3.3.1, C403.4.5, C403.7.1, C404.6, 404.7	
Chilled water plants .....	C403.4.5	
Economizers .....	C403.5, C403.5.1, C403.5.3.2, C403.5.3.3, Table C403.5.3.3	
Energy recovery systems.....	C403.7.4	

Fan speed.....	C403.8.1, C403.8.5, C403.8.5.1, C403.9	Chapter 2
Freeze protection system.....	C403.12.3	Table C301.3(2)
Glazing.....	C402.4.3.3	Table C301.3(2)
Heat pump.....	C403.4.1.1, C403.4.3.3	DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV)
Heating and cooling.....	C403.3.1, C403.4, C403.5.1	Defined..... C202
Hot water system.....	C404.6	Requirements..... C403.7.1
Humidity.....	C403.4.1, C403.5.1, C403.7.4	<b>DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM</b>
HVAC.....	C403.4, C408.2.3.2	Defined..... C202
Hydronic systems.....	C403.4.3	Requirements..... C404.7
Lighting.....	C402.4, C402.4.1.1, C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2.1, C402.4.3.1, C405.2, C405.4.1	<b>DESIGN CONDITIONS</b>
Lighting, digital.....	C406.4	C302
Off hour.....	C403.4.2	<b>DIRECT EXPANSION (DX)</b>
Service water heating.....	C403.3.3, C404.5, C404.6	..... C403.8.5.1
Shutoff dampers.....	C 403.4.4, C403.7.7	<b>DOORS</b>
Snow melt system.....	C403.12.2	Default <i>U</i> -factors..... Table C303.1.3(2)
Temperature.....	C403.4.1, C403.4.2, C403.4.2.1, C403.4.2.2, C403.4.2.3, C403.4.3, C403.7.7	Garage doors..... C303.1.3
Three-pipe system.....	C403.4.3.1	Loading docks..... C402.5.6
Two-pipe changeover system.....	C403.4.3.2	Opaque..... C402.2.7
Variable air volume systems.....	C403.5.2, C403.6	Performance requirements..... Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C402.4, C402.4.5, 402.5.4
Ventilation.....	C403.2.6	Vestibules..... C402.5.7
<b>COOLING SYSTEMS</b>		<b>DRAIN WATER HEAT RECOVERY</b>
Hot gas bypass limitation.....	C403.2.2	..... C404.8
<b>COOLING TOWER</b>	..... C403.9.3, C403.9.4	<b>DUAL DUCT VAV</b>
<b>COOLING WITH OUTDOOR AIR</b>	..... C403.5.1	..... C403.6.3, C403.6.4
<b>CRAWL SPACE WALLS</b>		<b>DUCTS</b>
Defined.....	C202	Defined..... C202
Requirements.....	C303.2.1	Insulation..... C103.2, C403.11.1, C403.11.2, C403.11.2.1, C403.11.2.2, C403.11.2.3
<b>CURTAIN WALL</b>		Sealing..... C103.2, C403.11.1, C403.11.2.1, C403.11.2.2, C403.11.2.3
Defined.....	C202	<b>DUCT SYSTEM</b>
Air leakage of fenestration.....	Table C402.5.2	Defined..... C202
<b>D</b>		Requirements..... C403.11.2
<b>DAMPERS</b>	..... C402.5.5, C403.7.7	<b>DWELLING UNIT</b>
<b>DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL</b>		Defined..... C202
Defined.....	C202	Electrical Meter..... C405.5
Required.....	C402.4.1.1, C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2.1, C402.4.3.1, C402.4.3.2, C405.2.3.1	Lighting..... C405.1
<b>DAYLIGHT ZONE</b>	..... C402.4.4, C405.2.3.2, C405.2.3.3	Vestibules..... C402.5.7
Defined.....	C202	<b>DYNAMIC GLAZING</b>
Under skylights.....	C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2, C405.2.2.3	Defined..... C202
<b>DAYLIGHT ZONE CONTROL</b>	..... C405.2.3	Requirements..... C402.4.3.3
<b>DEADBAND</b>	..... C403.4.1.2, C403.4.1.3, C403.4.3.3.1	<b>E</b>
<b>ECONOMIZER</b>		
Air.....	Table C403.5(1), C403.5.3	
Controls.....	C403.5.1, C403.6.8, C403.6.9	
Defined.....	C202	
Fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) .....	C403.2.5.5	
High-limit shutoff control .....	C403.5.3.3, Table C403.5.3.3	
Requirements .....	C403.5.3, C403.5.4	
Water .....	C403.5.4	
<b>EFFICIENCY, ADDITIONAL</b>	..... C406	

<b>ELECTRICAL METERS</b> . . . . .	C405.5
<b>ELECTRICAL MOTORS</b> . . . . .	C405.7
<b>ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING</b> . . . . .	C405
<b>ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMERS</b> . . . . .	C405.6
<b>ELEVATOR POWER</b> . . . . .	C405.8.1, C405.8.2
<b>ELEVATOR SHAFTS</b> . . . . .	C402.5.4, C402.5.5
<b>ENCLOSED SPACE</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Under skylights . . . . .	C402.4.2
<b>ENERGY ANALYSIS, ANNUAL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Documentation . . . . .	C407
Requirements . . . . .	C407
<b>ENERGY COST</b>	
Compliance performance . . . . .	C401.2
Defined . . . . .	C202
Performance basis . . . . .	C407.3
<b>ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (EER)</b> . . . . .	C403.3.2, Tables C403.3.2(1, 2, 3, 6, 7)
<b>ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Requirements . . . . .	C403.1.1, C403.7.4
<b>ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Requirements/use . . . . .	C101.5.1, C407, C407.2, C407.5
<b>ENTRANCE DOOR</b>	
Air leakage . . . . .	Table C402.5.2
Defined . . . . .	C202
Thermal performance . . . . .	Table C402.4
<b>ENVELOPE, BUILDING THERMAL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>ENVELOPE DESIGN METHODS</b> . . . . .	C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5
<b>EQUIPMENT BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	C402.1.2
<b>EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES</b> . . . . .	C103.2, C403.3.2, C403.5.1, C403.8.5, C404.2
<b>EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS</b> . . . . .	C403.3.2
Boilers . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(5)
Condensing units . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(6)
Economizer exception . . . . .	Tables C403.5(2)
Heat rejection equipment . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(8)
Packaged terminal air conditioners and heat pump . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(3)
Unitary air conditioners and condensing units . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(1)
Unitary and applied heat pumps . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(2)
Warm air duct furnaces and unit heaters . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(4)
Warm air furnaces . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(4)
Warm air furnaces/air-conditioning units . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(4)
Water chilling packages, standard . . . . .	Table C403.3.2(7)
Water heating . . . . .	Table C404.2, C404.2.1
<b>EQUIPMENT ROOM</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Lower power allowance . . . . .	Table C405.4.2(2)
<b>ESCALATORS</b> . . . . .	C405.8.2
<b>EXEMPT BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	C401.1.1, C402.1.2
<b>EXHAUSTS</b> . . . . .	C402.5.5
<b>EXIT SIGNS</b> . . . . .	C405.2, C405.3.1
<b>EXISTING BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	Chapter 5
<b>EXTERIOR LIGHTING</b> . . . . .	C405.2.5, C405.4
<b>EXTERNAL SHADING</b> . . . . .	Table C407.5.1(1)
<b>EXTERIOR WALLS</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Thermal performance . . . . .	C402, C402.2.2
<b>F</b>	
<b>F-FACTOR</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Assembly <i>U</i> -, <i>C</i> - or <i>F</i> -factor method . . . . .	C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4
<b>FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP)</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>FAN EFFICIENCY GRADE (FEG)</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Requirements . . . . .	C403.8.3
<b>FAN FLOOR HORSEPOWER</b> . . . . .	C403.8.1
<b>FAN POWER</b>	
LIMITATION . . . . .	Tables C403.8.1(1, 2)
<b>FAN SYSTEM BHP</b>	
Allowable . . . . .	C403.8.1
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS</b>	
Allowable . . . . .	C403.8.2
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>FAULT DETECTION &amp; DIAGNOSTICS (FDD)</b>	
Economizers . . . . .	C403.2.5.5
<b>FEES</b> . . . . .	C104
Refunds . . . . .	C104.5
Related fees . . . . .	C104.4
Schedule of permit fees . . . . .	C104.2
<b>FENESTRATION</b>	
( <i>see also</i> <b>Doors</b> ) . . . . .	C303.1.3, C402.4
Air leakage (infiltration) rate . . . . .	C402.5.2, Table C402.5.2
Defined . . . . .	C202

Maximum area . . . . .	C402.4.1, C402.4.1.2
Rating and labeling . . . . .	C303.1.3, C402.1.3
Skylights . . . . .	C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2, C402.4.2.1, C402.4.2.2, C402.4.3, C502.2.2, C503.3.3
Solar heat gain (SHGC) . . . . .	C402.4.3, Table C402.4
Vertical . . . . .	C402.1, C402.4.1.1, C402.4.3, Table C402.4, C502.2.1, C503.3.2
<b>FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Air leakage . . . . .	C402.5.2
<b>FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>FLOOR AREA, NET</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Fenestration increase . . . . .	C402.4.1.1
<b>FLOORS</b>	
Slab on grade . . . . .	C402.2.4
Thermal properties . . . . .	C402.2.3
<b>FREEZE PROTECTION SYSTEMS</b>	. . . . . C403.12.3
<b>FURNACE EFFICIENCY</b>	. . . . . Table C403.3.2(4)
<b>G</b>	
<b>GENERAL LIGHTING</b>	
Additional lighting . . . . .	C405.3.2.2.1
Daylight controls . . . . .	C405.2.3
Defined . . . . .	C202
Interior lighting power . . . . .	C405.3.1
<b>GENERAL PURPOSE ELECTRIC MOTORS</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
<b>GREENHOUSE</b>	
Defined . . . . .	C202
Building envelope . . . . .	C402.1.1
<b>GUESTROOMS (see SLEEPING UNIT)</b>	
<b>GLAZING AREA</b>	
Default fenestration <i>U</i> -factors . . . . .	Table C303.1.3(1)
Dynamic . . . . .	C402.4.3.3
<b>H</b>	
<b>HAZE FACTOR</b>	. . . . . C402.4.2.2
<b>HEAT PUMP</b>	. . . . . Tables C403.3.2(2, 3), C403.4.1.1, C403.4.3.3
<b>HEAT RECOVERY</b>	
Drain water . . . . .	C404.8, C406.7.1
Economizer exemption . . . . .	C403.5
Kitchen exhaust . . . . .	C403.7.5
Service water . . . . .	C403.9.5
<b>I</b>	
<b>ICE MELT SYSTEMS</b>	. . . . . C403.12.2
<b>IDENTIFICATION (MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEM)</b>	. . . . . C303.1

## INDEX

**INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE**(see **CONDITIONED SPACE**)**INFILTRATION** (air leakage)(see **AIR BARRIER**)

Defined . . . . . C202

**INSPECTIONS** . . . . . C105

Inspection agencies . . . . . C105.4

**INSULATED SIDING** . . . . . C303.1.4.1**INSULATION**Continuous insulation . . . . . C303.2.2, C402.1.3,  
Table C402.1.3, C402.2.1

Duct . . . . . C403.11.1

Identification . . . . . C303.1, C303.1.2

Installation . . . . . C303.1.1, C303.1.1.1,  
C303.1.2, C303.2

Mechanical system piping . . . . . C403.11.3

Piping . . . . . C404.4

Plenum . . . . . C403.11.1

Product rating . . . . . C303.1.4

Protection of exposed foundation . . . . . C303.2.1

Protection of piping insulation . . . . . C403.11.3.1

Radiant heating systems . . . . . C402.2.6

Requirements . . . . . C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3,  
C402.2 through C402.2.6**INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE****(IPLV)**

Defined . . . . . C202

Requirements . . . . . Tables C403.3.2(6, 7),  
C403.3.2.1, Table 403.3(2)**INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER** . . . . . C405.3, C405.3.2**K****KITCHEN EXHAUST** . . . . . C403.7.5, Table C403.7.5**L****LABELED**

Dampers . . . . . C403.7.7

Defined . . . . . C202

Fans . . . . . C403.8.3

Glazing, skylights . . . . . C402.2.1.1,  
C402.4.2.4, C402.5.2

HVAC equipment . . . . . Table C403.3.2(3)

Lighting . . . . . C402.5.8, C405.3.1

Requirements . . . . . C303.1.3, C303.3,  
Table C403.3.2(3)**LIGHTING POWER**

Additional lighting . . . . . C405.3.2.2.1, C405.4.1

Design procedures . . . . . C405.3.2,  
C405.3.2.1, C405.3.2.2Exterior connected . . . . . C405.4, C405.4.1,  
Tables C405.4.2(1, 2)Interior connected . . . . . C405.3, C405.3.1, C405.3.2,  
Tables C405.3.2(1, 2), C406.3

Reduced lighting power density . . . . . C406.3

**LIGHTING SYSTEMS** . . . . . C405, C406.3Controls, exterior . . . . . C405.2.5,  
Tables C405.4.2(1, 2), C405.4.1Controls, interior . . . . . C405.2.2,  
C405.3, C405.3.1, C405.3.2,  
Tables C405.3.2(1, 2), C406.4

Daylight responsive . . . . . C405.2.3, C405.2.3.1

Dwelling and sleeping units . . . . . C405.1, C405.2.2,  
C405.2.3, C405.2.4, C405.3.1Existing buildings . . . . . C502.1, C502.2.6,  
C503.1, C503.6, 504.1

Light reduction . . . . . C405.2.2.2

Occupant sensor controls . . . . . C405.2.1, C405.2.1.1,  
C405.2.1.2

Recessed . . . . . C402.5.8

Retail display . . . . . C405.3.2.2.1

Specific applications . . . . . C405.2.4

Time switch controls . . . . . C405.2.2, C405.2.2.1

**LINER SYSTEM (Ls)**

Defined . . . . . C202

Insulation . . . . . Table C402.1.3

**LISTED**

Defined . . . . . C202

Kitchen exhaust hoods . . . . . C403.7.5

Skylights . . . . . C402.2.1.1

**LOADING DOCK WEATHERSEALS** . . . . . C402.5.6**LOW-ENERGY BUILDINGS** . . . . . C402.1.1**LOW-SLOPED ROOF**

Defined . . . . . C202

Roof solar reflectance . . . . . C402.3

**LUMINAIRE**Controls . . . . . C405.2, C405.2.1,  
C405.2.2, C405.2.3, C405.2.4

Sealed . . . . . C402.5.8

Wattage . . . . . C405.3.1, C405.4.1

**M****MAINTENANCE**

General . . . . . C501.2, C501.3

Instructions for equipment and systems . . . . . C303.3

Owner responsibility . . . . . C501.3

**MANUALS** . . . . . C101.5.1

Defined . . . . . C202

**MASS**

Floor . . . . . Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4

Wall . . . . . C402.2.2

<b>MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT</b> .....	C303
<b>MECHANICAL SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT</b> .....	C403
Existing buildings .....	C501.5, C502.1, C502.2.3, C503.4, C504
<b>MECHANICAL VENTILATION</b> .....	C403.1, C403.2.2
<b>METERS, ELECTRICAL</b> .....	C405.5
<b>MOTOR NAMEPLATE</b>	
<b>HORSEPOWER</b> .....	C403.8.2
Efficiency .....	C405.7
<b>MOVING WALKWAYS</b> .....	C405.8.2
<b>MULTIFAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS</b> .....	C407.5.2.3
<b>MULTIPLE-ZONE SYSTEMS</b> .....	C403.6, C403.6.5
 <b>N</b>	
<b>NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER</b>	
Defined .....	C202
<b>NET FLOOR AREA (see FLOOR AREA, NET)</b>	
<b>NONCONDITIONED SPACE</b>	
Alterations .....	C503.2
<b>NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE</b>	
Defined .....	C202
 <b>O</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY</b>	
Complex HVAC systems .....	C403.6
Compliance .....	C101.4, C101.5
Lighting power allowances .....	C405.2.2, C405.3.2, C405.3.2.1, Tables C405.3.2(1, 2)
Mixed occupancies .....	C101.4.1
<b>OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL</b>	
Commissioning .....	C408.3.1.1
Defined .....	C202
Lighting .....	C406.4
Outdoor heating .....	C403.12.1
Required .....	C405.2.1, C405.2.1.1, C405.2.1.2
<b>OFF-HOUR, CONTROLS</b> .....	C403.4.2, C403.7.7, C405.2.2.1
<b>ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY</b>	
Defined .....	C202
Efficiency package .....	C406.5
<b>OPAQUE AREAS</b> .....	C402.1, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4
<b>OPAQUE DOORS</b>	
Defined .....	C202
Regulated .....	Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.4.5
<b>OPERATING &amp; MAINTENANCE MANUAL</b> .....	C408.2.5.2
<b>ORIENTATION</b>	
Daylight Responsive controls .....	C405.2.3.1
Fenestration .....	Table C402.4
Thermostatic controls .....	C403.4.1, C407.5.2.2
 <b>P</b>	
<b>PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONER (PTAC)</b>	
Requirements .....	Table C403.3.2(3)
<b>PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMP</b>	
Requirements .....	Table C403.3.2(3)
<b>PARKING GARAGE VENTILATION</b> .....	C403.7.2
<b>PERFORMANCE ANALYSIS</b> .....	C407
<b>PERMIT (see FEES)</b>	
Work commencing before permit .....	C104.3
<b>PIPE INSULATION</b> .....	C403.11.3, Table C403.11.3, C404.4
<b>PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS</b> .....	C103
<b>PLENUMS</b>	
Insulation and sealing .....	C403.11.1
<b>POOLS</b> .....	C404.9
Controls .....	C404.9.1, 404.9.2
Covers .....	C404.9.3
Existing buildings .....	C502.2.5
<b>POWER DENSITY</b> .....	C406.3
<b>POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS</b>	
Defined .....	C202
Fan efficiency exemption .....	C403.8.3
<b>PROPOSED DESIGN</b>	
Defined .....	C202
Requirements .....	C407
<b>PUBLIC LAVATORY</b> .....	C404.5
<b>PUMPING SYSTEMS</b> .....	C403.4.3.3, C404.6, C408.2.2.2
 <b>R</b>	
<b>R-VALUE</b>	
Above-grade walls .....	C402.2.2
Defined .....	C202
Insulation component method .....	C402.1.3, Table C402.1.3
Roof assemblies .....	C402.2.1
Slabs on grade .....	C402.2.4
Steel stud walls .....	C402.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4.1
<b>RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM</b>	
Defined .....	C202
Insulation .....	C402.2.6

<b>READY ACCESS</b>	
Defined	C202
Lighting controls	C405.2.2.3, C405.2.3.1
<b>RECOOLING</b>	C403.6
<b>REFERENCED STANDARDS</b>	C107, Chapter 6
<b>REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER</b>	
Defined	C202
Requirements	C403.10.1
<b>REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER</b>	
Defined	C202
Requirements	C403.10.1
<b>REFRIGERATION EQUIPMENT</b>	
Performance	C403.10, Tables C403.10.1(1, 2)
<b>REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL</b>	
Commissioning	C408
Defined	C202
<b>REHEATING</b>	C403.6.5, C403.9.5
<b>RENEWABLE/NONDEPLETABLE ENERGY SOURCES</b>	C406.5
<b>REPAIR</b>	
Defined	C202
Historic buildings	C501.6
Requirements	C501.5, C504
<b>REPLACEMENT MATERIALS</b>	C501.5
Replacement fenestration	C401.2.1
<b>REROOFING</b>	
Defined	C202
<b>RESET CONTROL</b>	C403.6.5
<b>RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS</b>	
Compliance	C101.2, C101.4.1, C101.5
Defined	C202
<b>ROOF ASSEMBLY</b>	
Air barriers	C402.5.1.2.1
Defined	C202
Fenestration	C402.4.1, C402.4.1.2, C402.4.2, C405.2.3.3
Recover	C503.1
Reflectance and emittance options	Table C402.3
Repairs	C504.1
Replacement	C503.3.1
Requirements	C303.1.1.1, C402.2.1
Solar reflectance and thermal emittance	C402.3
<b>ROOF RECOVER</b>	
Defined	C202
Exemption	C503.1
<b>ROOF REPAIR</b>	
Defined	C202
Exemption	C504.1

<b>ROOF REPLACEMENT</b>	
Defined	C202
Requirements	C503.3.1
<b>ROOFTOP MONITOR</b>	
Daylight zones	C405.2.3.2
Defined	C202
Skylights required	C402.4.2
<b>ROOF VENTILATORS</b>	
(see POWERED ROOF/ WALL VENTILATORS)	
<b>ROOMS WITH FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCES</b>	C402.5.3

**S**

<b>SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE</b>	
Defined	C202
Refrigeration systems	C403.10.4.1
<b>SCOPE OF CODE</b>	C101.2
<b>SCREW LAMP HOLDERS</b>	
Defined	C202
Requirements	C405.3.1
<b>SEASONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (SEER)</b>	Tables C403.3.2(1, 2, 3)
<b>SERVICE WATER HEATING</b>	
Defined	C202
Drain water heat recovery	C404.8
Efficiency	C404.2.1, 404.5
Existing buildings	C502.2.4, C503.5, C504.1
Reduced use	C406.7
Requirements	C403.9.5, C404, C404.2, C404.2.1, 404.5, 404.6, 404.7
<b>SETBACK THERMOSTAT</b>	C403.4.2, C403.4.2.1, C403.4.2.2
<b>SHADING</b>	C402.3, C402.4.3
<b>SHGC</b>	
(see SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT)	
<b>SHUTOFF DAMPERS</b>	C402.5.5, C403.7.7
<b>SIMULATED PERFORMANCE</b>	
ALTERNATIVE	C407
<b>SIMULATION TOOL</b>	(see ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL)
<b>SINGLE ZONE</b>	C403.5
<b>SIZING</b>	
Equipment and system	C403.3.1
<b>SKYLIGHTS</b>	C402.1.5, C402.3, Table C402.4, C402.4.3.1, C402.4.3.2
Additions	C502.2.2
Air leakage (infiltration)	Table C402.5.2
Alterations	C503.3.3
Curb insulation	C402.2.1.1
Defined (see Fenestration)	C202

Haze factor . . . . .	C402.4.2.2	
Lighting controls . . . . .	C402.4.2.1	
Maximum area . . . . .	C402.4.1, C402.4.1.2	
Minimum area . . . . .	C402.4.2	
<b>SLAB-EDGE INSULATION</b> . . . . .	C303.2.1, C402.2.4	
<b>SLEEPING UNIT</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Lighting . . . . .	C405.1, C405.2.2, C405.2.4, C405.2.3	
<b>SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Minimum efficiency . . . . .	C405.7	
<b>SNOW MELT AND ICE SYSTEM</b>		
<b>CONTROLS</b> . . . . .	C403.12.2	
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC)</b> . . . . .		
C103.2, Table C303.1.3(3), C402.4.1.1, C402.4.3, Table C402.4, C402.4.3.1		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Dynamic glazing . . . . .	C402.4.3.3	
Replacement products . . . . .	C401.2.1	
<b>SPAS</b> . . . . .	C404.9, C404.10	
<b>STAIRWAYS</b> . . . . .	C402.5.4, C402.5.5, C403.7.7, C405.2, C405.2.1.1, Table C405.3.2(2)	
<b>STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Requirements . . . . .	C407, Tables C407.5.1(1, 3)	
<b>STANDARDS, REFERENCED</b> . . . . .	C107, Chapter 6	
<b>STEEL FRAMING</b> . . . . .	Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C402.1.4.1	
<b>STOP WORK ORDER</b> . . . . .	C108	
Authority . . . . .	C108.1	
Emergencies . . . . .	C108.3	
Failure to comply . . . . .	C108.4	
Issuance . . . . .	C108.2	
<b>STOREFRONT</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Glazing . . . . .	Table C402.5.2	
<b>SUPPLY AIR TEMPERATURE</b>		
<b>RESET CONTROLS</b> . . . . .	C403.6.5	
<b>SUSPENDED CEILINGS</b> . . . . .	C402.2.1	
<b>SWIMMING POOLS</b> . . . . .	C404.9	
<b>T</b>		
<b>TEMPERATURE DEADBAND</b> . . . . .	C403.4.3.3.1	
<b>TENANT SPACES</b> . . . . .	C406.1.1	
<b> THERMAL CONDUCTANCE (see C-Factor)</b>		
<b> THERMAL MASS (see MASS)</b>		
<b> THERMAL RESISTANCE (see R-VALUE)</b>		
<b> THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE (see U-FACTOR)</b>		
<b> THERMOSTAT</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Pools and spa heaters . . . . .	C404.9.1	
Requirements . . . . .	C403.4, C403.4.1, C403.2.4.1.2, C403.4.1.3, C403.4.2, C403.6	
Setback capabilities . . . . .	C403.4.2	
<b> TIME SWITCH CONTROL</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Requirements . . . . .	C405.2.2, C405.2.2.1	
<b> TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE</b> . . . . .		C407
<b> TOWNHOUSE (see RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS)</b>		
<b> TRANSFORMERS, ELECTRIC</b> . . . . .		C405.6
<b> U</b>		
<b> U-FACTOR</b>		
Area-weighted <i>U</i> -factor fenestration . . . . .	C402.4.3.4	
Assembly <i>U</i> -, <i>C</i> - or <i>F</i> -factor method . . . . .	C402.1.4, Table C402.1.4	
Component performance alternative . . . . .	C402.1.5	
Default door . . . . .	Table C303.1.3(2)	
Default glazed fenestration . . . . .	Table C303.1.3(1)	
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Fenestration . . . . .	C401.2.1, C402.4.3, Table C402.4	
Skylights . . . . .	Table C402.4, C402.4.3.2	
Steel framing . . . . .	C402.1.4.1	
<b> V</b>		
<b> VARIABLE AIR VOLUME SYSTEMS (VAV)</b> . . . . .		C403.4.5.6, C403.5.2, C403.6.2, C403.6.3, C403.6.5, C403.6.7, C403.6.9, C403.9.5, Table C407.5.1(3)
<b> VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Increased efficiencies . . . . .	C406.2	
<b> VENTILATION</b> . . . . .		C403.2.2
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Demand control ventilation (DCV) . . . . .	C403.7.1	
Energy recovery system . . . . .	C403.7.4, C406.6	
Parking garages . . . . .	C403.7.2	
<b> VENTILATION AIR</b>		
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Energy recovery . . . . .	C403.7.4	
Fan controls . . . . .	C403.8.5.1	
Kitchen exhaust . . . . .	C403.7.5	
<b> VERTICAL FENESTRATION (see FENESTRATION)</b>		
<b> VESTIBULES</b> . . . . .		C402.5.7, C403.4.1.4
<b> VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT)</b>		
Default glazed fenestration . . . . .	Table C303.1.3(3)	
Defined . . . . .	C202	
Dynamic glazing . . . . .	C402.4.3.3	
Increased fenestration . . . . .	C402.4.1.1	
Skylights . . . . .	C402.4.2, C405.2.3.3	

**INDEX****W****WALK-IN COOLER**

Defined ..... C202  
 Requirements ..... C403.10.1, C403.2.16

**WALK-IN FREEZER**

Defined ..... C202  
 Requirements ..... C403.10.1, C403.10.2

**WALL**

Above-grade wall, defined ..... C202  
 Thermal resistance ..... Table C402.1.3,  
     Table C402.1.4, C402.2.2  
 Below-grade wall, defined ..... C202  
 Thermal resistance ..... Table C402.1.3,  
     Table C402.1.4, C402.1.5  
 Crawl space wall, defined ..... C202  
 Exterior wall, defined ..... C202  
 Steel framed ..... C402.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4.1

**WALLS (see EXTERIOR WALLS AND  
ENVELOPE, BUILDING THERMAL)****WALLS ADJACENT TO UNCONDITIONED  
SPACE (see BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE)****WALL VENTILATORS**

(see POWERED ROOF/ WALL VENTILATORS)

**WATER ECONOMIZER** ..... C403.5, C403.5.4,  
     C403.5.4.1, C403.5.4.2**WATER HEATER**

Defined ..... C202  
 Efficiency ..... Table C404.2, C404.2.1

**WATER HEATING** ..... C404, Table C404.2**WINDOW AREA**

(see FENESTRATION and GLAZING AREA)

**Z****ZONE (see also CLIMATE ZONES)**

Defined ..... C202  
 Requirements ..... C403.4, C403.5,  
     C407.5.2.1, C407.5.2.2

# IECC—RESIDENTIAL PROVISIONS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>	<b>R-3</b>
<b>PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION.....</b>	<b>R-3</b>
Section	
R101 Scope and General Requirements .....	R-3
R102 Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment .....	R-3
<b>PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....</b>	<b>R-3</b>
R103 Construction Documents.....	R-3
R104 Fees .....	R-4
R105 Inspections.....	R-4
R106 Validity .....	R-5
R107 Referenced Standards .....	R-5
R108 Stop Work Order .....	R-5
R109 Board of Appeals.....	R-6
<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>R-7</b>
Section	
R201 General .....	R-7
R202 General Definitions .....	R-7
<b>CHAPTER 3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.....</b>	<b>R-11</b>
Section	
R301 Climate Zones .....	R-11
R302 Design Conditions.....	R-26
R303 Materials, Systems and Equipment .....	R-26
<b>CHAPTER 4 RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY .....</b>	<b>R-29</b>
Section	
R401 General .....	R-29
R402 Building Thermal Envelope .....	R-29
R403 Systems .....	R-35
R404 Electrical Power and Lighting Systems.....	R-37
R405 Simulated Performance Alternative (Performance) .....	R-37
R406 Energy Rating Index Compliance Alternative.....	R-42
<b>CHAPTER 5 EXISTING BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>R-45</b>
Section	
R501 General .....	R-45
R502 Additions.....	R-45
R503 Alterations.....	R-46
R504 Repairs .....	R-46
R505 Change of Occupancy or Use .....	R-47
<b>CHAPTER 6 REFERENCED STANDARDS.....</b>	<b>R-49</b>
<b>APPENDIX RA SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES.....</b>	<b>R-53</b>
Section	
RA101 Scope .....	R-53
RA102 General Definition .....	R-53
RA103 Solar-ready Zone .....	R-53
<b>INDEX.....</b>	<b>R-55</b>



# CHAPTER 1 [RE]

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of this code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application (Sections 101–102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103–109). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section 107.1).

*This code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document, and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.*

### PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

#### SECTION R101 SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**R101.1 Title.** This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as “this code.”

**R101.2 Scope.** This code applies to *residential buildings* and the *building* sites and associated systems and equipment.

**R101.3 Intent.** This code shall regulate the design and construction of *buildings* for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

**R101.4 Applicability.** Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

**R101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings.** Where a *building* includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of the IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

**R101.5 Compliance.** *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

**R101.5.1 Compliance materials.** The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

#### SECTION R102 ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

**R102.1 General.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code. The *code official* shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon application of the owner or the owner’s authorized agent. The *code official* shall first find that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code for strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

**R102.1.1 Above code programs.** The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy-efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this code. *Buildings approved* in writing by such an energy-efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified as “mandatory” in Chapter 4 shall be met.

### PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

#### SECTION R103 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

**R103.1 General.** Construction documents, technical reports and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit. The construction documents and technical reports shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

**Exception:** The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other support-

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

ing data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

**R103.2 Information on construction documents.** Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the *building*, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include the following as applicable:

1. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
2. Fenestration *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC).
3. Area-weighted *U*-factor and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) calculations.
4. Mechanical system design criteria.
5. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
6. Equipment and system controls.
7. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
8. Air sealing details.

**R103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction.** The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction documents.

**R103.3 Examination of documents.** The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

**R103.3.1 Approval of construction documents.** When the *code official* issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance." Such *approved* construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

**R103.3.2 Previous approvals.** This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pur-

sued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

**R103.3.3 Phased approval.** The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

**R103.4 Amended construction documents.** Work shall be installed in accordance with the *approved* construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved* construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

**R103.5 Retention of construction documents.** One set of *approved* construction documents shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

## SECTION R104 FEES

**R104.1 Fees.** A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section R104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

**R104.2 Schedule of permit fees.** A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

**R104.3 Work commencing before permit issuance.** Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the *code official* that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

**R104.4 Related fees.** The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

**R104.5 Refunds.** The *code official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

## SECTION R105 INSPECTIONS

**R105.1 General.** Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the *code official* or his or her designated agent, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the *code official*

nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

**R105.2 Required inspections.** The *code official* or his or her designated agent, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections R105.2.1 through R105.2.5.

**R105.2.1 Footing and foundation inspection.** Inspections associated with footings and foundations shall verify compliance with the code as to *R-value*, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications.

**R105.2.2 Framing and rough-in inspection.** Inspections at framing and rough-in shall be made before application of interior finish and shall verify compliance with the code as to: types of insulation and corresponding *R-values* and their correct location and proper installation; fenestration properties such as *U-factor* and SHGC and proper installation; and air leakage controls as required by the code; and approved plans and specifications.

**R105.2.3 Plumbing rough-in inspection.** Inspections at plumbing rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications as to types of insulation and corresponding *R-values* and protection, and required controls.

**R105.2.4 Mechanical rough-in inspection.** Inspections at mechanical rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications as to installed HVAC equipment type and size, required controls, system insulation and corresponding *R-value*, system air leakage control, programmable thermostats, dampers, whole-house ventilation, and minimum fan efficiency.

**Exception:** Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall be inspected in accordance with Section C105.2.4.

**R105.2.5 Final inspection.** The *building* shall have a final inspection and shall not be occupied until *approved*. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation of all required *building* systems, equipment and controls and their proper operation and the required number of high-efficacy lamps and fixtures.

**R105.3 Reinspection.** A *building* shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.

**R105.4 Approved inspection agencies.** The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the *building* design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the *building* components and systems that they are inspecting.

**R105.5 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

**R105.6 Reinspection and testing.** Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.

**R105.7 Approval.** After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the *code official*.

**R105.7.1 Revocation.** The *code official* is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

## SECTION R106 VALIDITY

**R106.1 General.** If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

## SECTION R107 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**R107.1 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those indicated in Chapter 5, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections R107.1.1 and R107.1.2.

**R107.1.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**R107.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.** Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

**R107.2 Application of references.** References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

**R107.3 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

## SECTION R108 STOP WORK ORDER

**R108.1 Authority.** Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner either contrary to the provisions of this code or dangerous or unsafe, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**R108.2 Issuance.** The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, to the owner's authorized agent, or to the person doing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

**R108.3 Emergencies.** Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

**R108.4 Failure to comply.** Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to a fine as set by the applicable governing authority.

## SECTION R109 BOARD OF APPEALS

**R109.1 General.** In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The *code official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the *code official*.

**R109.2 Limitations on authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

**R109.3 Qualifications.** The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

## CHAPTER 2 [RE]

# DEFINITIONS

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purpose of the code.

### SECTION R201 GENERAL

**R201.1 Scope.** Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

**R201.2 Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

**R201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code* or the *International Residential Code* shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

**R201.4 Terms not defined.** Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

### SECTION R202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

**ABOVE-GRADE WALL.** A wall more than 50 percent above grade and enclosing *conditioned space*. This includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and basement knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and *skylight* shafts.

**ACCESSIBLE.** Admitting close approach as a result of not being guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means (see "Readily accessible").

**ADDITION.** An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

**AIR BARRIER.** One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

**AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION.** An insulation that functions as an air barrier material.

**ALTERATION.** Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than *repair* or *addition*. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

**APPROVED.** Acceptable to the *code official*.

**APPROVED AGENCY.** An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been *approved* by the *code official*.

**AUTOMATIC.** Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "Manual").

**BASEMENT WALL.** A wall 50 percent or more below grade and enclosing *conditioned space*.

**BUILDING.** Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

**BUILDING SITE.** A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

**BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE.** The *basement walls*, *exterior walls*, floors, ceiling, roofs and any other *building* element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

**CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM.** A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixtures and back to the water-heating equipment.

**CLIMATE ZONE.** A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

**CODE OFFICIAL.** The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

**COMMERCIAL BUILDING.** For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of "Residential building."

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA.** The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

**CONDITIONED SPACE.** An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and that is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings

## DEFINITIONS

with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

**CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER.** A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope*.

**CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci).** Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface, of the *building envelope*.

**CRAWL SPACE WALL.** The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

**CURTAIN WALL.** Fenestration products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

**DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM.** A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe.

**DUCT.** A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

**DUCT SYSTEM.** A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

**DWELLING UNIT.** A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

**ENERGY ANALYSIS.** A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

**ENERGY COST.** The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

**ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL.** An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a *building*.

**ERI REFERENCE DESIGN.** A version of the *rated design* that meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

**EXTERIOR WALL.** Walls including both above-grade walls and *basement walls*.

**FENESTRATION.** Products classified as either *vertical fenestration* or *skylights*.

**Skylights.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

**Vertical fenestration.** Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combi-

nation opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT.** A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

**HEATED SLAB.** Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

**HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS.** Compact fluorescent lamps, light-emitting diode (LED) lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, or other lamps with an efficacy of not less than the following:

1. 60 lumens per watt for lamps over 40 watts.
2. 50 lumens per watt for lamps over 15 watts to 40 watts.
3. 40 lumens per watt for lamps 15 watts or less.

**HISTORIC BUILDING.** Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

**INFILTRATION.** The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a *building* caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

**INSULATED SIDING.** A type of continuous insulation with manufacturer-installed insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product having an *R*-value of not less than *R*-2.

**LABLED.** Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved* agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of such labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LISTED.** Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

## DEFINITIONS

**LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING.** Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.

**MANUAL.** Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "Automatic").

**OPAQUE DOOR.** A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

**PROPOSED DESIGN.** A description of the proposed *building* used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

**RATED DESIGN.** A description of the proposed *building* used to determine the energy rating index.

**READILY ACCESSIBLE.** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspection without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders or access equipment (see "Accessible").

**REPAIR.** The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing *building* for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

**REROOFING.** The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "Roof recover" and "Roof replacement."

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDING.** For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as well as *Group R-2, R-3 and R-4* buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane.

**ROOF ASSEMBLY.** A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment and roof deck, and can also include a thermal barrier, an ignition barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

**ROOF RE-COVER.** The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

**ROOF REPAIR.** Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

**ROOF REPLACEMENT.** The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

**R-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ( $h \cdot ft^2 \cdot ^\circ F/Btu$ ) [ $(m^2 \cdot K)/W$ ].

**SERVICE WATER HEATING.** Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC).** The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

**STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN.** A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

**SUNROOM.** A one-story structure attached to a dwelling with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's *exterior walls* and roof.

**THERMAL ISOLATION.** Physical and space conditioning separation from *conditioned spaces*. The *conditioned spaces* shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate equipment.

**THERMOSTAT.** An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

**U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films ( $Btu/h \cdot ft^2 \cdot ^\circ F$ ) [ $W/(m^2 \cdot K)$ ].

**VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

**VENTILATION AIR.** That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

**VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT].** The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible Transmittance, includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

**WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM.** An exhaust system, supply system, or combination thereof that is designed to mechanically exchange indoor air with outdoor air when operating continuously or through a programmed intermittent schedule to satisfy the whole house ventilation rates.

**ZONE.** A space or group of spaces within a *building* with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.



# CHAPTER 3 [RE]

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 3 covers general regulations for energy conservation features of buildings. The climate zone for a building is established by geographic location tables and figures in this chapter.

---

### SECTION R301 CLIMATE ZONES

**R301.1 General.** *Climate zones* from Figure R301.1 or Table R301.1 shall be used for determining the applicable requirements from Chapter 4. Locations not indicated in Table R301.1 shall be assigned a *climate zone* in accordance with Section R301.3.

**R301.2 Warm humid counties.** In Table R301.1, warm humid counties are identified by an asterisk.

**R301.3 International climate zones.** The *climate zone* for any location outside the United States shall be determined by applying Table R301.3(1) and then Table R301.3(2).

**R301.4 Tropical climate zone.** The tropical *climate zone* shall be defined as:

1. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Commonwealth of Northern Mariana Islands; and
2. Islands in the area between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

101033858

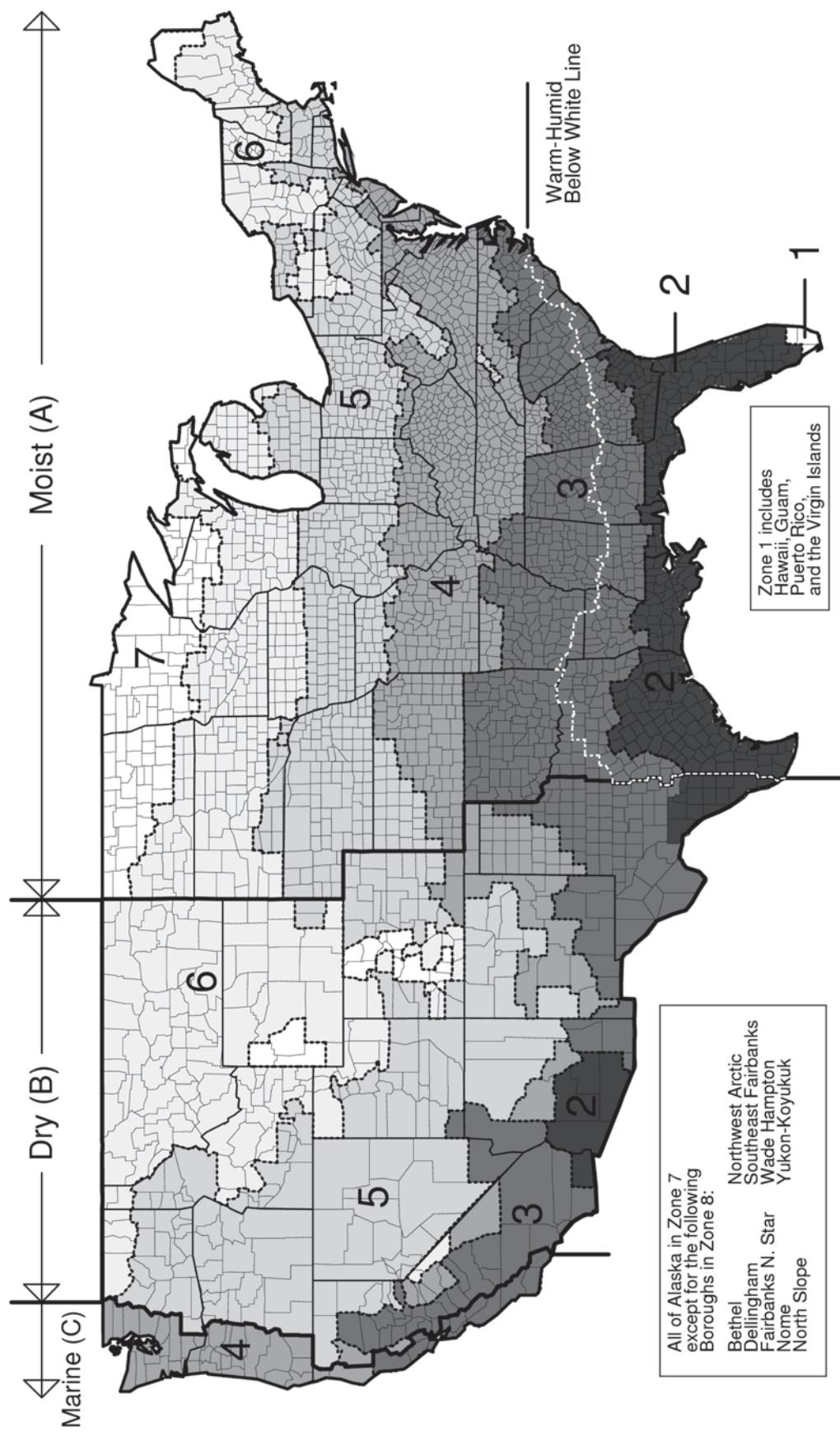


FIGURE R301.1  
CLIMATE ZONES

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE R301.1**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key: A – Moist, B – Dry, C – Marine. Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant.**  
**Asterisk (\*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

**US STATES**

<b>ALABAMA</b>	3A Lee	7 Kodiak Island	3A Calhoun	3A Monroe
3A Autauga*	3A Limestone	7 Lake and Peninsula	4A Carroll	3A Montgomery
2A Baldwin*	3A Lowndes*	7 Matanuska-Susitna	3A Chicot	3A Nevada
3A Barbour*	3A Macon*	8 Nome	3A Clark	4A Newton
3A Bibb	3A Madison	8 North Slope	3A Clay	3A Ouachita
3A Blount	3A Marengo*	8 Northwest Arctic	3A Cleburne	3A Perry
3A Bullock*	3A Marion	7 Prince of Wales-Outer Ketchikan	3A Cleveland	3A Phillips
3A Butler*	3A Marshall	7 Sitka	3A Columbia*	3A Pike
3A Calhoun	2A Mobile*	7 Skagway-Hoonah-Angoon	3A Conway	3A Poinsett
3A Chambers	3A Monroe*	8 Southeast Fairbanks	3A Craighead	3A Polk
3A Cherokee	3A Montgomery*	7 Valdez-Cordova	3A Crawford	3A Pope
3A Chilton	3A Morgan	8 Wade Hampton	3A Crittenden	3A Prairie
3A Choctaw*	3A Perry*	7 Wrangell-Petersburg	3A Cross	3A Pulaski
3A Clarke*	3A Pickens	7 Yakutat	3A Dallas	3A Randolph
3A Clay	3A Pike*	8 Yukon-Koyukuk	3A Desha	3A Saline
3A Cleburne	3A Randolph		3A Drew	3A Scott
3A Coffee*	3A Russell*		3A Faulkner	4A Searcy
3A Colbert	3A Shelby		3A Franklin	3A Sebastian
3A Conecuh*	3A St. Clair		4A Fulton	3A Sevier*
3A Coosa	3A Sumter	5B Apache	3A Garland	3A Sharp
3A Covington*	3A Talladega	3B Cochise	3A Grant	3A St. Francis
3A Crenshaw*	3A Tallapoosa	5B Coconino	3A Greene	4A Stone
3A Cullman	3A Tuscaloosa	4B Gila	3A Hempstead*	3A Union*
3A Dale*	3A Walker	3B Graham	3A Hot Spring	3A Van Buren
3A Dallas*	3A Washington*	3B Greenlee	3A Howard	4A Washington
3A DeKalb	3A Wilcox*	2B La Paz	3A Independence	3A White
3A Elmore*	3A Winston	2B Maricopa	4A Izard	3A Woodruff
3A Escambia*		3B Mohave	3A Jackson	3A Yell
	<b>ALASKA</b>	5B Navajo	3A Jefferson	
3A Etowah	7 Aleutians East	2B Pima	3A Johnson	<b>CALIFORNIA</b>
3A Fayette	7 Aleutians West	2B Pinal	3A Lafayette*	3C Alameda
3A Franklin	7 Anchorage	3B Santa Cruz	3A Lawrence	6B Alpine
3A Geneva*	8 Bethel	4B Yavapai	3A Lee	4B Amador
3A Greene	7 Bristol Bay	2B Yuma	3A Lincoln	3B Butte
3A Hale	7 Denali		3A Little River*	4B Calaveras
3A Henry*	8 Dillingham	3A Arkansas	3A Logan	3B Colusa
3A Houston*	8 Fairbanks North Star	3A Ashley	3A Lonoce	3B Contra Costa
3A Jackson	7 Haines	4A Baxter	4A Madison	4C Del Norte
3A Jefferson	7 Juneau	4A Benton	4A Marion	4B El Dorado
3A Lamar	7 Kenai Peninsula	4A Boone	3A Miller*	3B Fresno
3A Lauderdale	7 Ketchikan Gateway	3A Bradley	3A Mississippi	3B Glenn
3A Lawrence				

*(continued)*

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

4C Humboldt	3B Yuba	5B Montrose	2A Escambia*	2A Taylor*
2B Imperial	<b>COLORADO</b>	5B Morgan	2A Flagler*	2A Union*
4B Inyo	5B Adams	4B Otero	2A Franklin*	2A Volusia*
3B Kern	6B Alamosa	6B Ouray	2A Gadsden*	2A Wakulla*
3B Kings	5B Arapahoe	7 Park	2A Gilchrist*	2A Walton*
4B Lake	6B Archuleta	5B Phillips	2A Glades*	2A Washington*
5B Lassen	7 Pitkin	7 Pitkin	2A Gulf*	<b>GEORGIA</b>
3B Los Angeles	4B Baca	5B Prowers	2A Hamilton*	2A Appling*
3B Madera	5B Bent	5B Pueblo	2A Hardee*	2A Atkinson*
3C Marin	5B Boulder	6B Rio Blanco	2A Hendry*	2A Bacon*
4B Mariposa	5B Broomfield	7 Rio Grande	2A Hernando*	2A Baker*
3C Mendocino	6B Chaffee	7 Routt	2A Highlands*	3A Baldwin
3B Merced	5B Cheyenne	6B Saguache	2A Hillsborough*	4A Banks
5B Modoc	7 Clear Creek	7 San Juan	2A Holmes*	3A Barrow
6B Mono	6B Conejos	6B San Miguel	2A Indian River*	3A Bartow
3C Monterey	6B Costilla	5B Sedgwick	2A Jackson*	3A Ben Hill*
3C Napa	5B Crowley	7 Summit	2A Jefferson*	2A Berrien*
5B Nevada	6B Custer	5B Teller	2A Lafayette*	3A Bibb
3B Orange	5B Delta	5B Washington	2A Lake*	3A Bleckley*
3B Placer	5B Denver	5B Weld	2A Lee*	2A Brooks*
5B Plumas	6B Dolores	5B Yuma	2A Leon*	2A Bryan*
3B Riverside	5B Douglas	<b>CONNECTICUT</b>	2A Levy*	3A Bulloch*
3B Sacramento	6B Eagle	5A (all)	2A Liberty*	3A Burke
3C San Benito	5B Elbert	<b>DELAWARE</b>	2A Madison*	3A Butts
3B San Bernardino	5B El Paso	4A (all)	2A Manatee*	3A Calhoun*
3B San Diego	5B Fremont	<b>DISTRICT OF</b>	2A Marion*	2A Camden*
3C San Francisco	5B Garfield	<b>COLUMBIA</b>	2A Martin*	3A Candler*
3B San Joaquin	5B Gilpin	4A (all)	1A Miami-Dade*	3A Carroll
3C San Luis Obispo	7 Grand	<b>FLORIDA</b>	1A Monroe*	4A Catoosa
3C San Mateo	7 Gunnison	2A Alachua*	2A Nassau*	2A Charlton*
3C Santa Barbara	7 Hinsdale	2A Baker*	2A Okaloosa*	2A Chatham*
3C Santa Clara	5B Huerfano	2A Bay*	2A Okeechobee*	3A Chattahoochee*
3C Santa Cruz	7 Jackson	2A Bradford*	2A Orange*	4A Chattooga
3B Shasta	5B Jefferson	2A Brevard*	2A Osceola*	3A Cherokee
5B Sierra	5B Kiowa	1A Broward*	2A Palm Beach*	3A Clarke
5B Siskiyou	5B Kit Carson	2A Calhoun*	2A Pasco*	3A Clay*
3B Solano	7 Lake	2A Charlotte*	2A Pinellas*	3A Clayton
3C Sonoma	5B La Plata	2A Citrus*	2A Polk*	2A Clinch*
3B Stanislaus	5B Larimer	2A Clay*	2A Putnam*	3A Cobb
3B Sutter	4B Las Animas	2A Collier*	2A Santa Rosa*	3A Coffee*
3B Tehama	5B Lincoln	2A Columbia*	2A Sarasota*	2A Colquitt*
4B Trinity	5B Logan	2A DeSoto*	2A Seminole*	3A Columbia
3B Tulare	5B Mesa	2A Dixie*	2A St. Johns*	2A Cook*
4B Tuolumne	7 Mineral	2A Duval*	2A St. Lucie*	3A Coweta
3C Ventura	6B Moffat		2A Sumter*	
3B Yolo	5B Montezuma		2A Suwannee*	

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

3A Crawford	2A Lanier*	3A Taylor*	5B Cassia	4A Crawford
3A Crisp*	3A Laurens*	3A Telfair*	6B Clark	5A Cumberland
4A Dade	3A Lee*	3A Terrell*	5B Clearwater	5A DeKalb
4A Dawson	2A Liberty*	2A Thomas*	6B Custer	5A De Witt
2A Decatur*	3A Lincoln	3A Tift*	5B Elmore	5A Douglas
3A DeKalb	2A Long*	2A Toombs*	6B Franklin	5A DuPage
3A Dodge*	2A Lowndes*	4A Towns	6B Fremont	5A Edgar
3A Dooly*	4A Lumpkin	3A Treutlen*	5B Gem	4A Edwards
3A Dougherty*	3A Macon*	3A Troup	5B Gooding	4A Effingham
3A Douglas	3A Madison	3A Turner*	5B Idaho	4A Fayette
3A Early*	3A Marion*	3A Twiggs*	6B Jefferson	5A Ford
2A Echols*	3A McDuffie	4A Union	5B Jerome	4A Franklin
2A Effingham*	2A McIntosh*	3A Upson	5B Kootenai	5A Fulton
3A Elbert	3A Meriwether	4A Walker	5B Latah	4A Gallatin
3A Emanuel*	2A Miller*	3A Walton	6B Lemhi	5A Greene
2A Evans*	2A Mitchell*	2A Ware*	5B Lewis	5A Grundy
4A Fannin	3A Monroe	3A Warren	5B Lincoln	4A Hamilton
3A Fayette	3A Montgomery*	3A Washington	6B Madison	5A Hancock
4A Floyd	3A Morgan	2A Wayne*	5B Minidoka	4A Hardin
3A Forsyth	4A Murray	3A Webster*	5B Nez Perce	5A Henderson
4A Franklin	3A Muscogee	3A Wheeler*	6B Oneida	5A Henry
3A Fulton	3A Newton	4A White	5B Owyhee	5A Iroquois
4A Gilmer	3A Oconee	4A Whitfield	5B Payette	4A Jackson
3A Glascock	3A Oglethorpe	3A Wilcox*	5B Power	4A Jasper
2A Glynn*	3A Paulding	3A Wilkes	5B Shoshone	4A Jefferson
4A Gordon	3A Peach*	3A Wilkinson	6B Teton	5A Jersey
2A Grady*	4A Pickens	3A Worth*	5B Twin Falls	5A Jo Daviess
3A Greene	2A Pierce*	<b>HAWAII</b>	6B Valley	4A Johnson
3A Gwinnett	3A Pike	1A (all)*	5B Washington	5A Kane
4A Habersham	3A Polk	<b>IDAHO</b>	<b>ILLINOIS</b>	5A Kankakee
4A Hall	3A Pulaski*	5B Ada	5A Adams	5A Kendall
3A Hancock	3A Putnam	6B Adams	4A Alexander	5A Knox
3A Haralson	3A Quitman*	6B Bannock	4A Bond	5A Lake
3A Harris	4A Rabun	6B Bear Lake	5A Boone	5A La Salle
3A Hart	3A Randolph*	5B Benewah	5A Brown	4A Lawrence
3A Heard	3A Richmond	6B Bingham	5A Bureau	5A Lee
3A Henry	3A Rockdale	6B Blaine	5A Calhoun	5A Livingston
3A Houston*	3A Schley*	6B Boise	5A Carroll	5A Logan
3A Irwin*	3A Screven*	6B Bonner	5A Cass	5A Macon
3A Jackson	2A Seminole*	6B Bonneville	5A Champaign	4A Macoupin
3A Jasper	3A Spalding	6B Boundary	4A Christian	4A Madison
2A Jeff Davis*	4A Stephens	6B Butte	5A Clark	4A Marion
3A Jefferson	3A Stewart*	6B Camas	4A Clay	5A Marshall
3A Jenkins*	3A Sumter*	5B Canyon	4A Clinton	5A Mason
3A Johnson*	3A Talbot	6B Caribou	5A Coles	4A Massac
3A Jones	3A Taliaferro		5A Cook	5A McDonough
3A Lamar	2A Tattnall*			5A McHenry

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A McLean	5A Boone	5A Miami	5A Appanoose	5A Jasper
5A Menard	4A Brown	4A Monroe	5A Audubon	5A Jefferson
5A Mercer	5A Carroll	5A Montgomery	5A Benton	5A Johnson
4A Monroe	5A Cass	5A Morgan	6A Black Hawk	5A Jones
4A Montgomery	4A Clark	5A Newton	5A Boone	5A Keokuk
5A Morgan	5A Clay	5A Noble	6A Bremer	6A Kossuth
5A Moultrie	5A Clinton	4A Ohio	6A Buchanan	5A Lee
5A Ogle	4A Crawford	4A Orange	6A Buena Vista	5A Linn
5A Peoria	4A Daviess	5A Owen	6A Butler	5A Louisa
4A Perry	4A Dearborn	5A Parke	6A Calhoun	5A Lucas
5A Piatt	5A Decatur	4A Perry	5A Carroll	6A Lyon
5A Pike	5A De Kalb	4A Pike	5A Cass	5A Madison
4A Pope	5A Delaware	5A Porter	5A Cedar	5A Mahaska
4A Pulaski	4A Dubois	4A Posey	6A Cerro Gordo	5A Marion
5A Putnam	5A Elkhart	5A Pulaski	6A Cherokee	5A Marshall
4A Randolph	5A Fayette	5A Putnam	6A Chickasaw	5A Mills
4A Richland	4A Floyd	5A Randolph	5A Clarke	6A Mitchell
5A Rock Island	5A Fountain	4A Ripley	6A Clay	5A Monona
4A Saline	5A Franklin	5A Rush	6A Clayton	5A Monroe
5A Sangamon	5A Fulton	4A Scott	5A Clinton	5A Montgomery
5A Schuyler	4A Gibson	5A Shelby	5A Crawford	5A Muscatine
5A Scott	5A Grant	4A Spencer	5A Dallas	6A O'Brien
4A Shelby	4A Greene	5A Starke	5A Davis	6A Osceola
5A Stark	5A Hamilton	5A Steuben	5A Decatur	5A Page
4A St. Clair	5A Hancock	5A St. Joseph	6A Delaware	6A Palo Alto
5A Stephenson	4A Harrison	4A Sullivan	5A Des Moines	6A Plymouth
5A Tazewell	5A Hendricks	4A Switzerland	6A Dickinson	6A Pocahontas
4A Union	5A Henry	5A Tippecanoe	5A Dubuque	5A Polk
5A Vermilion	5A Howard	5A Tipton	6A Emmet	5A Pottawattamie
4A Wabash	5A Huntington	5A Union	6A Fayette	5A Poweshiek
5A Warren	4A Jackson	4A Vanderburgh	6A Floyd	5A Ringgold
4A Washington	5A Jasper	5A Vermillion	6A Franklin	6A Sac
4A Wayne	5A Jay	5A Vigo	5A Fremont	5A Scott
4A White	4A Jefferson	5A Wabash	5A Greene	5A Shelby
5A Whiteside	4A Jennings	5A Warren	6A Grundy	6A Sioux
5A Will	5A Johnson	4A Warrick	5A Guthrie	5A Story
4A Williamson	4A Knox	4A Washington	6A Hamilton	5A Tama
5A Winnebago	5A Kosciusko	5A Wayne	6A Hancock	5A Taylor
5A Woodford	5A LaGrange	5A Wells	6A Hardin	5A Union
<b>INDIANA</b>				
5A Adams	5A Lake	5A White	5A Harrison	5A Van Buren
5A Allen	5A LaPorte	5A Whitley	5A Henry	5A Wapello
5A Bartholomew	4A Lawrence	<b>IOWA</b>		5A Warren
5A Benton	5A Madison	5A Adair	6A Howard	5A Washington
5A Blackford	5A Marion	5A Adams	6A Humboldt	5A Wayne
	5A Marshall	5A Marshall	6A Ida	6A Webster
	4A Martin	6A Allamakee	5A Iowa	6A Winnebago
			5A Jackson	

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

6A Winneshiek	4A Haskell	4A Sedgwick	2A Iberville*	6A Cumberland
5A Woodbury	4A Hodgeman	4A Seward	3A Jackson*	6A Franklin
6A Worth	4A Jackson	4A Shawnee	2A Jefferson*	6A Hancock
6A Wright	4A Jefferson	5A Sheridan	2A Jefferson Davis*	6A Kennebec
<b>KANSAS</b>	5A Jewell	5A Sherman	2A Lafayette*	6A Knox
4A Allen	4A Johnson	5A Smith	2A Lafourche*	6A Lincoln
4A Anderson	4A Kearny	4A Stafford	3A La Salle*	6A Oxford
4A Atchison	4A Kingman	4A Stanton	3A Lincoln*	6A Penobscot
4A Barber	4A Kiowa	4A Stevens	2A Livingston*	6A Piscataquis
4A Barton	4A Labette	4A Sumner	3A Madison*	6A Sagadahoc
4A Bourbon	5A Lane	5A Thomas	3A Morehouse	6A Somerset
4A Brown	4A Leavenworth	5A Trego	3A Natchitoches*	6A Waldo
4A Butler	4A Lincoln	4A Wabaunsee	2A Orleans*	6A Washington
4A Chase	4A Linn	5A Wallace	3A Ouachita*	6A York
4A Chautauqua	5A Logan	4A Washington	2A Plaquemines*	<b>MARYLAND</b>
4A Cherokee	4A Lyon	5A Wichita	2A Pointe Coupee*	4A Allegany
5A Cheyenne	4A Marion	4A Wilson	2A Rapides*	4A Anne Arundel
4A Clark	4A Marshall	4A Woodson	3A Red River*	4A Baltimore
4A Clay	4A McPherson	4A Wyandotte	3A Richland*	4A Baltimore (city)
5A Cloud	4A Meade	<b>KENTUCKY</b>	3A Sabine*	4A Calvert
4A Coffey	4A Miami	4A (all)	2A St. Bernard*	4A Caroline
4A Comanche	5A Mitchell	<b>LOUISIANA</b>	2A St. Charles*	4A Carroll
4A Cowley	4A Montgomery	2A Acadia*	2A St. Helena*	4A Cecil
4A Crawford	4A Morris	2A Allen*	2A St. James*	4A Charles
5A Decatur	4A Morton	2A Ascension*	2A St. John the	4A Dorchester
4A Dickinson	4A Nemaha	2A Assumption*	Baptist*	4A Frederick
4A Doniphan	4A Neosho	2A Avoyelles*	2A St. Landry*	5A Garrett
4A Douglas	5A Ness	2A Beauregard*	2A St. Martin*	4A Harford
4A Edwards	5A Norton	3A Bienville*	2A St. Mary*	4A Howard
4A Elk	4A Osage	3A Bossier*	2A St. Tammany*	4A Kent
5A Ellis	5A Osborne	3A Caddo*	2A Tangipahoa*	4A Montgomery
4A Ellsworth	4A Ottawa	2A Calcasieu*	3A Tensas*	4A Prince George's
4A Finney	4A Pawnee	3A Caldwell*	2A Terrebonne*	4A Queen Anne's
4A Ford	5A Phillips	2A Cameron*	3A Union*	4A Somerset
4A Franklin	4A Pottawatomie	3A Catahoula*	2A Vermilion*	4A St. Mary's
4A Geary	4A Pratt	3A Claiborne*	3A Vernon*	4A Talbot
5A Gove	5A Rawlins	3A Concordia*	2A Washington*	4A Washington
5A Graham	4A Reno	3A De Soto*	3A Webster*	4A Wicomico
4A Grant	5A Republic	2A East Baton Rouge*	2A West Baton	4A Worcester
4A Gray	4A Rice	3A East Carroll	Rouge*	<b>MASSACHSETTS</b>
5A Greeley	4A Riley	2A East Feliciana*	3A West Carroll	5A (all)
4A Greenwood	5A Rooks	2A Evangeline*	2A West Feliciana*	<b>MICHIGAN</b>
5A Hamilton	4A Rush	3A Franklin*	3A Winn*	6A Alcona
4A Harper	4A Russell	3A Grant*	<b>MAINE</b>	6A Alger
4A Harvey	4A Saline	2A Iberia*	6A Androscoggin	
	5A Scott		7 Aroostook	

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A Allegan	7 Mackinac	6A Carver	7 Otter Tail	3A Clarke
6A Alpena	5A Macomb	7 Cass	7 Pennington	3A Clay
6A Antrim	6A Manistee	6A Chippewa	7 Pine	3A Coahoma
6A Arenac	6A Marquette	6A Chisago	6A Pipestone	3A Copiah*
7 Baraga	6A Mason	7 Clay	7 Polk	3A Covington*
5A Barry	6A Mecosta	7 Clearwater	6A Pope	3A DeSoto
5A Bay	6A Menominee	7 Cook	6A Ramsey	3A Forrest*
6A Benzie	5A Midland	6A Cottonwood	7 Red Lake	3A Franklin*
5A Berrien	6A Missaukee	7 Crow Wing	6A Redwood	3A George*
5A Branch	5A Monroe	6A Dakota	6A Renville	3A Greene*
5A Calhoun	5A Montcalm	6A Dodge	6A Rice	3A Grenada
5A Cass	6A Montmorency	6A Douglas	6A Rock	2A Hancock*
6A Charlevoix	5A Muskegon	6A Faribault	7 Roseau	2A Harrison*
6A Cheboygan	6A Newaygo	6A Fillmore	6A Scott	3A Hinds*
7 Chippewa	5A Oakland	6A Freeborn	6A Sherburne	3A Holmes
6A Clare	6A Oceana	6A Goodhue	6A Sibley	3A Humphreys
5A Clinton	6A Ogemaw	7 Grant	6A Stearns	3A Issaquena
6A Crawford	7 Ontonagon	6A Hennepin	6A Steele	3A Itawamba
6A Delta	6A Osceola	6A Houston	6A Stevens	2A Jackson*
6A Dickinson	6A Oscoda	7 Hubbard	7 St. Louis	3A Jasper
5A Eaton	6A Otsego	6A Isanti	6A Swift	3A Jefferson*
6A Emmet	5A Ottawa	7 Itasca	6A Todd	3A Jefferson Davis*
5A Genesee	6A Presque Isle	6A Jackson	6A Traverse	3A Jones*
6A Gladwin	6A Roscommon	7 Kanabec	6A Wabasha	3A Kemper
7 Gogebic	5A Saginaw	6A Kandiyohi	7 Wadena	3A Lafayette
6A Grand Traverse	6A Sanilac	7 Kittson	6A Waseca	3A Lamar*
5A Gratiot	7 Schoolcraft	7 Koochiching	6A Washington	3A Lauderdale
5A Hillsdale	5A Shiawassee	6A Lac qui Parle	6A Watonwan	3A Lawrence*
7 Houghton	5A St. Clair	7 Lake	7 Wilkin	3A Leake
6A Huron	5A St. Joseph	7 Lake of the Woods	6A Winona	3A Lee
5A Ingham	5A Tuscola	6A Le Sueur	6A Wright	3A Leflore
5A Ionia	5A Van Buren	6A Lincoln	6A Yellow	3A Lincoln*
6A Iosco	5A Washtenaw	6A Lyon	Medicine	3A Lowndes
7 Iron	5A Wayne	7 Mahnomen		3A Madison
6A Isabella	6A Wexford	7 Marshall		3A Marion*
5A Jackson	<b>MINNESOTA</b>			
5A Kalamazoo	6A Martin	3A Adams*		3A Marshall
6A Kalkaska	6A McLeod	3A Alcorn		3A Monroe
5A Kent	6A Meeker	3A Amite*		3A Montgomery
7 Keweenaw	7 Mille Lacs	3A Attala		3A Neshoba
6A Lake	6A Morrison	3A Benton		3A Newton
5A Lapeer	6A Mower	3A Bolivar		3A Noxubee
6A Leelanau	6A Murray	3A Calhoun		3A Oktibbeha
5A Lenawee	6A Nicollet	3A Carroll		3A Panola
5A Livingston	6A Nobles	3A Chickasaw		2A Pearl River*
7 Luce	7 Norman	3A Choctaw		3A Perry*
	7 Carlton	3A Olmsted		3A Pike*

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

3A Pontotoc	5A Chariton	4A Mississippi	4A Webster	4A Cumberland
3A Prentiss	4A Christian	4A Moniteau	5A Worth	4A Essex
3A Quitman	5A Clark	4A Monroe	4A Wright	4A Gloucester
3A Rankin*	4A Clay	4A Montgomery	<b>MONTANA</b>	4A Hudson
3A Scott	5A Clinton	4A Morgan	6B (all)	5A Hunterdon
3A Sharkey	4A Cole	4A New Madrid	<b>NEBRASKA</b>	5A Mercer
3A Simpson*	4A Cooper	4A Newton		4A Middlesex
3A Smith*	4A Crawford	5A Nodaway	5A (all)	4A Monmouth
2A Stone*	4A Dade	4A Oregon	<b>NEVADA</b>	5A Morris
3A Sunflower	4A Dallas	4A Osage		4A Ocean
3A Tallahatchie	5A Daviess	4A Ozark	5B Carson City (city)	5A Passaic
3A Tate	5A DeKalb	4A Pemiscot	5B Churchill	4A Salem
3A Tippah	4A Dent	4A Perry	3B Clark	5A Somerset
3A Tishomingo	4A Douglas	4A Pettis	5B Douglas	5A Sussex
3A Tunica	4A Dunklin	4A Phelps	5B Elko	4A Union
3A Union	4A Franklin	5A Pike	5B Esmeralda	5A Warren
3A Walthall*	4A Gasconade	4A Platte	5B Eureka	<b>NEW MEXICO</b>
3A Warren*	5A Gentry	4A Polk	5B Humboldt	4B Bernalillo
3A Washington	4A Greene	4A Pulaski	5B Lander	5B Catron
3A Wayne*	5A Grundy	5A Putnam	5B Lincoln	3B Chaves
3A Webster	5A Harrison	5A Ralls	5B Lyon	4B Cibola
3A Wilkinson*	4A Henry	4A Randolph	5B Mineral	5B Colfax
3A Winston	4A Hickory	4A Ray	5B Nye	4B Curry
3A Yalobusha	5A Holt	4A Reynolds	5B Pershing	4B DeBaca
3A Yazoo	4A Howard	4A Ripley	5B Storey	3B Dona Ana
<b>MISSOURI</b>	4A Howell	4A Saline	5B Washoe	3B Eddy
5A Adair	4A Iron	5A Schuyler	5B White Pine	4B Grant
5A Andrew	4A Jackson	5A Scotland	<b>NEW HAMPSHIRE</b>	4B Guadalupe
5A Atchison	4A Jasper	4A Scott	6A Belknap	5B Harding
4A Audrain	4A Jefferson	4A Shannon	6A Carroll	3B Hidalgo
4A Barry	4A Johnson	5A Shelby	5A Cheshire	3B Lea
4A Barton	5A Knox	4A St. Charles	6A Coos	4B Lincoln
4A Bates	4A Laclede	4A St. Clair	6A Grafton	5B Los Alamos
4A Benton	4A Lafayette	4A St. Francois	5A Hillsborough	3B Luna
4A Bollinger	4A Lawrence	4A St. Louis	6A Merrimack	5B McKinley
4A Boone	5A Lewis	4A St. Louis (city)	5A Rockingham	5B Mora
5A Buchanan	4A Lincoln	4A Ste. Genevieve	5A Strafford	3B Otero
4A Butler	5A Linn	4A Stoddard	6A Sullivan	4B Quay
5A Caldwell	5A Livingston	4A Stone	<b>NEW JERSEY</b>	5B Rio Arriba
4A Callaway	5A Macon	5A Sullivan	4A Atlantic	4B Roosevelt
4A Camden	4A Madison	4A Taney	5A Bergen	5B Sandoval
4A Cape Girardeau	4A Maries	4A Texas	4A Burlington	5B San Juan
4A Carroll	5A Marion	4A Vernon	4A Camden	5B San Miguel
4A Carter	4A McDonald	4A Warren	4A Cape May	5B Santa Fe
4A Cass	5A Mercer	4A Washington		4B Sierra
4A Cedar	4A Miller	4A Wayne		4B Socorro

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5B Taos	4A Queens	4A Clay	4A Orange	7 Divide
5B Torrance	5A Rensselaer	4A Cleveland	3A Pamlico	6A Dunn
4B Union	4A Richmond	3A Columbus*	3A Pasquotank	7 Eddy
4B Valencia	5A Rockland	3A Craven	3A Pender*	6A Emmons
<b>NEW YORK</b>	<b>5A Saratoga</b>	<b>3A Cumberland</b>	<b>3A Perquimans</b>	<b>7 Foster</b>
5A Albany	5A Schenectady	3A Currituck	4A Person	6A Golden Valley
6A Allegany	6A Schoharie	3A Dare	3A Pitt	7 Grand Forks
4A Bronx	6A Schuyler	3A Davidson	4A Polk	6A Grant
6A Broome	5A Seneca	4A Davie	3A Randolph	7 Griggs
6A Cattaraugus	6A Steuben	3A Duplin	3A Richmond	6A Hettinger
5A Cayuga	6A St. Lawrence	4A Durham	3A Robeson	7 Kidder
5A Chautauqua	4A Suffolk	3A Edgecombe	4A Rockingham	6A LaMoure
5A Chemung	6A Sullivan	4A Forsyth	3A Rowan	6A Logan
6A Chenango	5A Tioga	4A Franklin	4A Rutherford	7 McHenry
6A Clinton	6A Tompkins	3A Gaston	3A Sampson	6A McIntosh
5A Columbia	6A Ulster	4A Gates	3A Scotland	6A McKenzie
5A Cortland	6A Warren	4A Graham	3A Stanly	7 McLean
6A Delaware	5A Washington	4A Granville	4A Stokes	6A Mercer
5A Dutchess	5A Wayne	3A Greene	4A Surry	6A Morton
5A Erie	4A Westchester	4A Guilford	4A Swain	7 Mountrail
6A Essex	6A Wyoming	4A Halifax	4A Transylvania	7 Nelson
6A Franklin	5A Yates	4A Harnett	3A Tyrrell	6A Oliver
6A Fulton	<b>NORTH CAROLINA</b>	4A Haywood	3A Union	7 Pembina
5A Genesee		4A Henderson	4A Vance	7 Pierce
5A Greene	4A Alamance	4A Hertford	4A Wake	7 Ramsey
6A Hamilton	4A Alexander	3A Hoke	4A Warren	6A Ransom
6A Herkimer	5A Alleghany	3A Hyde	3A Washington	7 Renville
6A Jefferson	3A Anson	4A Iredell	5A Watauga	6A Richland
4A Kings	5A Ashe	4A Jackson	3A Wayne	7 Rolette
6A Lewis	5A Avery	3A Johnston	4A Wilkes	6A Sargent
5A Livingston	3A Beaufort	3A Jones	3A Wilson	7 Sheridan
6A Madison	4A Bertie	4A Lee	4A Yadkin	6A Sioux
5A Monroe	3A Bladen	3A Lenoir	5A Yancey	6A Slope
6A Montgomery	3A Brunswick*	4A Lincoln	<b>NORTH DAKOTA</b>	6A Stark
4A Nassau	4A Buncombe	4A Macon	6A Adams	7 Steele
4A New York	4A Burke	4A Madison	7 Barnes	7 Stutsman
5A Niagara	3A Cabarrus	3A Martin	7 Benson	7 Towner
6A Oneida	4A Caldwell	4A McDowell	7 Billings	7 Traill
5A Onondaga	3A Camden	3A Mecklenburg	7 Bottineau	7 Walsh
5A Ontario	3A Carteret*	5A Mitchell	6A Bowman	7 Ward
5A Orange	4A Caswell	3A Montgomery	7 Burke	7 Wells
5A Orleans	4A Catawba	3A Moore	6A Burleigh	7 Williams
5A Oswego	4A Chatham	4A Nash	7 Cass	<b>OHIO</b>
6A Otsego	4A Cherokee	3A New Hanover*	7 Cavalier	4A Adams
5A Putnam	3A Chowan	4A Northampton	6A Dickey	5A Allen
		3A Onslow*		

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A Ashland	5A Mahoning	3A Bryan	3A Okfuskee	4C Linn
5A Ashtabula	5A Marion	3A Caddo	3A Oklahoma	5B Malheur
5A Athens	5A Medina	3A Canadian	3A Okmulgee	4C Marion
5A Auglaize	5A Meigs	3A Carter	3A Osage	5B Morrow
5A Belmont	5A Mercer	3A Cherokee	3A Ottawa	4C Multnomah
4A Brown	5A Miami	3A Choctaw	3A Pawnee	4C Polk
5A Butler	5A Monroe	4B Cimarron	3A Payne	5B Sherman
5A Carroll	5A Montgomery	3A Cleveland	3A Pittsburg	4C Tillamook
5A Champaign	5A Morgan	3A Coal	3A Pontotoc	5B Umatilla
5A Clark	5A Morrow	3A Comanche	3A Pottawatomie	5B Union
4A Clermont	5A Muskingum	3A Cotton	3A Pushmataha	5B Wallowa
5A Clinton	5A Noble	3A Craig	3A Roger Mills	5B Wasco
5A Columbiana	5A Ottawa	3A Creek	3A Rogers	4C Washington
5A Coshocton	5A Paulding	3A Custer	3A Seminole	5B Wheeler
5A Crawford	5A Perry	3A Delaware	3A Sequoyah	4C Yamhill
5A Cuyahoga	5A Pickaway	3A Dewey	3A Stephens	<b>PENNSYLVANIA</b>
5A Darke	4A Pike	3A Ellis	4B Texas	5A Adams
5A Defiance	5A Portage	3A Garfield	3A Tillman	5A Allegheny
5A Delaware	5A Preble	3A Garvin	3A Tulsa	5A Armstrong
5A Erie	5A Putnam	3A Grady	3A Wagoner	5A Beaver
5A Fairfield	5A Richland	3A Grant	3A Washington	5A Beaver
5A Fayette	5A Ross	3A Greer	3A Washita	5A Bedford
5A Franklin	5A Sandusky	3A Harmon	3A Woods	5A Berks
5A Fulton	4A Scioto	3A Harper	3A Woodward	5A Blair
4A Gallia	5A Seneca	3A Haskell	<b>OREGON</b>	5A Bradford
5A Geauga	5A Shelby	3A Hughes	5B Baker	4A Bucks
5A Greene	5A Stark	3A Jackson	4C Benton	5A Butler
5A Guernsey	5A Summit	3A Jefferson	4C Clackamas	5A Cambria
4A Hamilton	5A Trumbull	3A Johnston	4C Clatsop	6A Cameron
5A Hancock	5A Tuscarawas	3A Kay	4C Columbia	5A Carbon
5A Hardin	5A Union	3A Kingfisher	4C Coos	5A Centre
5A Harrison	5A Van Wert	3A Kiowa	5B Crook	4A Chester
5A Henry	5A Vinton	3A Latimer	4C Curry	5A Clarion
5A Highland	5A Warren	3A Le Flore	5B Deschutes	6A Clearfield
5A Hocking	4A Washington	3A Lincoln	4C Douglas	5A Clinton
5A Holmes	5A Wayne	3A Logan	5B Gilliam	5A Columbia
5A Huron	5A Williams	3A Love	5B Grant	5A Crawford
5A Jackson	5A Wood	3A Major	5B Harney	5A Cumberland
5A Jefferson	5A Wyandot	3A Marshall	5B Hood River	5A Dauphin
5A Knox	<b>OKLAHOMA</b>			4A Delaware
5A Lake	3A Adair	3A Mayes	4C Jackson	6A Elk
4A Lawrence	3A Alfalfa	3A McClain	5B Jefferson	5A Erie
5A Licking	3A Atoka	3A McCurtain	4C Josephine	5A Fayette
5A Logan	4B Beaver	3A McIntosh	5B Klamath	5A Forest
5A Lorain	3A Beckham	3A Murray	5B Lake	5A Franklin
5A Lucas	3A Blaine	3A Muskogee	4C Lane	5A Fulton
5A Madison		3A Noble	4C Lincoln	5A Greene
		3A Nowata		

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

5A Huntingdon	3A Bamberg*	5A Bennett	6A Minnehaha	4A Gibson
5A Indiana	3A Barnwell*	5A Bon Homme	6A Moody	4A Giles
5A Jefferson	3A Beaufort*	6A Brookings	6A Pennington	4A Grainger
5A Juniata	3A Berkeley*	6A Brown	6A Perkins	4A Greene
5A Lackawanna	3A Calhoun	6A Brule	6A Potter	4A Grundy
5A Lancaster	3A Charleston*	6A Buffalo	6A Roberts	4A Hamblen
5A Lawrence	3A Cherokee	6A Butte	6A Sanborn	4A Hamilton
5A Lebanon	3A Chester	6A Campbell	6A Shannon	4A Hancock
5A Lehigh	3A Chesterfield	5A Charles Mix	6A Spink	3A Hardeman
5A Luzerne	3A Clarendon	6A Clark	6A Stanley	3A Hardin
5A Lycoming	3A Colleton*	5A Clay	6A Sully	4A Hawkins
6A McKean	3A Darlington	6A Codington	5A Todd	3A Haywood
5A Mercer	3A Dillon	6A Corson	5A Tripp	3A Henderson
5A Mifflin	3A Dorchester*	6A Custer	6A Turner	4A Henry
5A Monroe	3A Edgefield	6A Davison	5A Union	4A Hickman
4A Montgomery	3A Fairfield	6A Day	6A Walworth	4A Houston
5A Montour	3A Florence	6A Deuel	5A Yankton	4A Humphreys
5A Northampton	3A Georgetown*	6A Dewey	6A Ziebach	4A Jackson
5A Northumberland	3A Greenville	5A Douglas		4A Jefferson
5A Perry	3A Greenwood	6A Edmunds		4A Johnson
4A Philadelphia	3A Hampton*	6A Fall River		4A Knox
5A Pike	3A Horry*	6A Faulk		3A Lake
6A Potter	3A Jasper*	6A Grant		3A Lauderdale
5A Schuylkill	3A Kershaw	5A Gregory		4A Lawrence
5A Snyder	3A Lancaster	6A Haakon		4A Lewis
5A Somerset	3A Laurens	6A Hamlin		4A Lincoln
5A Sullivan	3A Lee	6A Hand		4A Loudon
6A Susquehanna	3A Lexington	6A Hanson		4A Macon
6A Tioga	3A Marion	6A Harding		3A Madison
5A Union	3A Marlboro	6A Hughes		4A Marion
5A Venango	3A McCormick	5A Hutchinson		4A Marshall
5A Warren	3A Newberry	6A Hyde		4A Maury
5A Washington	3A Oconee	5A Jackson		4A McMinn
6A Wayne	3A Orangeburg	6A Jerauld		3A McNairy
5A Westmoreland	3A Pickens	6A Jones		4A Meigs
5A Wyoming	3A Richland	6A Kingsbury		4A Monroe
4A York	3A Saluda	6A Lake		4A Montgomery
<b>RHODE ISLAND</b>	3A Spartanburg	6A Lawrence		4A Moore
5A (all)	3A Sumter	6A Lincoln		4A Morgan
<b>SOUTH</b> <b>CAROLINA</b>	3A Union	6A Lyman		4A Obion
3A Abbeville	3A Williamsburg	6A Marshall		4A Overton
3A Aiken	3A York	6A McCook		4A Perry
3A Allendale*		6A McPherson		4A Pickett
3A Anderson	6A Aurora	6A Meade		4A Polk
	6A Beadle	5A Mellette		4A Putnam
		6A Miner		4A Rhea

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

4A Roane	3B Brewster	3B Ector	3B Howard	3B McCulloch
4A Robertson	4B Briscoe	2B Edwards	3B Hudspeth	2A McLennan*
4A Rutherford	2A Brooks*	3A Ellis*	3A Hunt*	2A McMullen*
4A Scott	3A Brown*	3B El Paso	4B Hutchinson	2B Medina
4A Sequatchie	2A Burleson*	3A Erath*	3B Irion	3B Menard
4A Sevier	3A Burnet*	2A Falls*	3A Jack	3B Midland
3A Shelby	2A Caldwell*	3A Fannin	2A Jackson*	2A Milam*
4A Smith	2A Calhoun*	2A Fayette*	2A Jasper*	3A Mills*
4A Stewart	3B Callahan	3B Fisher	3B Jeff Davis	3B Mitchell
4A Sullivan	2A Cameron*	4B Floyd	2A Jefferson*	3A Montague
4A Sumner	3A Camp*	3B Foard	2A Jim Hogg*	2A Montgomery*
3A Tipton	4B Carson	2A Fort Bend*	2A Jim Wells*	4B Moore
4A Trousdale	3A Cass*	3A Franklin*	3A Johnson*	3A Morris*
4A Unicoi	4B Castro	2A Freestone*	3B Jones	3B Motley
4A Union	2A Chambers*	2B Frio	2A Karnes*	3A Nacogdoches*
4A Van Buren	2A Cherokee*	3B Gaines	3A Kaufman*	3A Navarro*
4A Warren	3B Childress	2A Galveston*	3A Kendall*	2A Newton*
4A Washington	3A Clay	3B Garza	2A Kenedy*	3B Nolan
4A Wayne	4B Cochran	3A Gillespie*	3B Kent	2A Nueces*
4A Weakley	3B Coke	3B Glasscock	3B Kerr	4B Ochiltree
4A White	3B Coleman	2A Goliad*	3B Kimble	4B Oldham
4A Williamson	3A Collin*	2A Gonzales*	3B King	2A Orange*
4A Wilson	3B Collingsworth	4B Gray	2B Kinney	3A Palo Pinto*
<b>TEXAS</b>				
2A Anderson*	2A Colorado*	3A Grayson	2A Kleberg*	3A Panola*
3B Andrews	2A Comal*	3A Gregg*	3B Knox	3A Parker*
2A Angelina*	3A Comanche*	2A Grimes*	3A Lamar*	4B Parmer
2A Aransas*	3B Concho	2A Guadalupe*	4B Lamb	3B Pecos
3A Archer	3A Cooke	4B Hale	3A Lampasas*	2A Polk*
4B Armstrong	2A Coryell*	3B Hall	2B La Salle	4B Potter
2A Atascosa*	3B Cottle	3A Hamilton*	2A Lavaca*	3B Presidio
2A Austin*	3B Crane	4B Hansford	2A Lee*	3A Rains*
2A Bailey	3B Crockett	3B Hardeman	2A Leon*	4B Randall
4B Bailey	3B Crosby	2A Hardin*	2A Liberty*	3B Reagan
2B Bandera	3B Culberson	2A Harris*	2A Limestone*	2B Real
2A Bastrop*	4B Dallam	3A Harrison*	4B Lipscomb	3A Red River*
3B Baylor	3A Dallas*	4B Hartley	2A Live Oak*	3B Reeves
2A Bee*	3B Dawson	3B Haskell	3A Llano*	2A Refugio*
2A Bell*	4B Deaf Smith	2A Hays*	3B Loving	4B Roberts
2A Bexar*	3A Delta	3B Hemphill	3B Lubbock	2A Robertson*
3A Blanco*	3A Denton*	3A Henderson*	3B Lynn	3A Rockwall*
3B Borden	2A DeWitt*	2A Hidalgo*	2A Madison*	3B Runnels
2A Bosque*	3B Dickens	2A Hill*	3A Marion*	3A Rusk*
3A Bowie*	2B Dimmit	4B Hockley	3B Martin	3A Sabine*
2A Brazoria*	4B Donley	3A Hood*	3B Mason	3A San Augustine*
2A Brazoria*	2A Duval*	3A Hopkins*	2A Matagorda*	2A San Jacinto*
2A Brazos*	3A Eastland	2A Houston*	2B Maverick	2A San Patricio*

(continued)

TABLE R301.1—continued  
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID  
DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

				<b>WISCONSIN</b>
3A San Saba*	3A Young	4C Clark	4A Gilmer	6A Adams
3B Schleicher	2B Zapata	5B Columbia	5A Grant	7 Ashland
3B Scurry	2B Zavala	4C Cowlitz	5A Greenbrier	6A Barron
3B Shackelford		5B Douglas	5A Hampshire	7 Bayfield
3A Shelby*		6B Ferry	5A Hancock	6A Brown
4B Sherman	5B Beaver	5B Franklin	5A Hardy	6A Buffalo
3A Smith*	6B Box Elder	5B Garfield	5A Harrison	7 Burnett
3A Somervell*	6B Cache	5B Grant	4A Jackson	6A Calumet
2A Starr*	6B Carbon	4C Grays Harbor	4A Jefferson	6A Chippewa
3A Stephens	6B Daggett	4C Island	4A Kanawha	6A Clark
3B Sterling	5B Davis	4C Jefferson	5A Lewis	6A Columbia
3B Stonewall	6B Duchesne	4C King	4A Lincoln	6A Crawford
3B Sutton	5B Emery	4C Kitsap	4A Logan	6A Dane
4B Swisher	5B Garfield	5B Kittitas	5A Marion	6A Dodge
3A Tarrant*	5B Grand	5B Klickitat	5A Marshall	6A Door
3B Taylor	5B Iron	4C Lewis	4A Mason	7 Douglas
3B Terrell	5B Juab	5B Lincoln	4A McDowell	6A Dunn
3B Terry	5B Kane	4C Mason	4A Mercer	6A Eau Claire
3B Throckmorton	5B Millard	6B Okanogan	5A Mineral	7 Florence
3A Titus*	6B Morgan	4C Pacific	4A Mingo	6A Fond du Lac
3B Tom Green	5B Piute	6B Pend Oreille	5A Monongalia	7 Forest
2A Travis*	6B Rich	4C Pierce	4A Monroe	6A Grant
2A Trinity*	5B Salt Lake	4C San Juan	4A Morgan	6A Green
2A Tyler*	5B San Juan	4C Skagit	5A Nicholas	6A Green Lake
3A Upshur*	5B Sanpete	5B Skamania	5A Ohio	6A Iowa
3B Upton	5B Sevier	4C Snohomish	5A Pendleton	7 Iron
2B Uvalde	6B Summit	5B Spokane	4A Pleasants	6A Jackson
2B Val Verde	5B Tooele	6B Stevens	5A Pocahontas	6A Jefferson
3A Van Zandt*	6B Uintah	4C Thurston	5A Preston	6A Juneau
2A Victoria*	5B Utah	4C Wahkiakum	4A Putnam	6A Kenosha
2A Walker*	6B Wasatch	5B Walla Walla	5A Raleigh	6A Kewaunee
2A Waller*	3B Washington	4C Whatcom	5A Randolph	6A La Crosse
3B Ward	5B Wayne	5B Whitman	4A Ritchie	6A Lafayette
2A Washington*	5B Weber	5B Yakima	4A Roane	7 Langlade
2B Webb			5A Summers	7 Lincoln
2A Wharton*	6A (all)		5A Taylor	6A Manitowoc
3B Wheeler		5A Barbour	5A Tucker	6A Marathon
3A Wichita		4A Berkeley	4A Tyler	6A Marinette
3B Wilbarger	4A (all)	4A Boone	5A Upshur	6A Marquette
2A Willacy*		4A Braxton	4A Wayne	6A Menominee
2A Williamson*		5A Brooke	5A Webster	6A Milwaukee
2A Wilson*	5B Adams	4A Cabell	5A Wetzel	6A Monroe
3B Winkler	5B Asotin	4A Calhoun	4A Wirt	6A Oconto
3A Wise	5B Benton	4A Clay	4A Wood	7 Oneida
3A Wood*	5B Chelan	5A Doddridge	4A Wyoming	6A Outagamie
4B Yoakum	4C Clallam	5A Fayette		

(continued)

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE R301.1—continued**  
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID**  
**DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

6A Ozaukee	7 Taylor	6B Big Horn	6B Sheridan	<b>NORTHERN</b>
6A Pepin	6A Trempealeau	6B Campbell	7 Sublette	<b>MARIANA</b>
6A Pierce	6A Vernon	6B Carbon	6B Sweetwater	<b>ISLANDS</b>
6A Polk	7 Vilas	6B Converse	7 Teton	1A (all)*
6A Portage	6A Walworth	6B Crook	6B Uinta	<b>PUERTO RICO</b>
7 Price	7 Washburn	6B Fremont	6B Washakie	1A (all)*
6A Racine	6A Washington	5B Goshen	6B Weston	<b>VIRGIN ISLANDS</b>
6A Richland	6A Waukesha	6B Hot Springs	<b>US TERRITORIES</b>	
6A Rock	6A Waupaca	6B Johnson	<b>AMERICAN</b>	
6A Rusk	6A Waushara	6B Laramie	<b>SAMOA</b>	
6A Sauk	6A Winnebago	7 Lincoln	<b>GUAM</b>	
7 Sawyer	6A Wood	6B Natrona	1A (all)*	
6A Shawano	<b>WYOMING</b>		6B Niobrara	
6A Sheboygan	6B Albany	6B Park		
6A St. Croix		5B Platte	1A (all)*	

**TABLE R301.3(1)**  
**INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS**

MAJOR CLIMATE-TYPE DEFINITIONS	
Marine (C) Definition—Locations meeting all four criteria:	
1. Mean temperature of coldest month between $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $27^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and $18^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $65^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
2. Warmest month mean $< 22^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $72^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
3. Not fewer than four months with mean temperatures over $10^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $50^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).	
4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has not less than three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.	
Dry (B) Definition—Locations meeting the following criteria:	
Not marine and $P_{in} < 0.44 \times (TF - 19.5)$ [ $P_{cm} < 2.0 \times (TC + 7)$ in SI units]	
where:	
$P_{in}$ = Annual precipitation in inches (cm)	
$T$ = Annual mean temperature in $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ )	
Moist (A) Definition—Locations that are not marine and not dry.	
Warm-humid Definition—Moist (A) locations where either of the following wet-bulb temperature conditions shall occur during the warmest six consecutive months of the year:	
1. $67^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $19.4^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or higher for 3,000 or more hours.	
2. $73^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $22.8^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or higher for 1,500 or more hours.	

For SI:  $^{\circ}\text{C} = [({}^{\circ}\text{F}) - 32]/1.8$ , 1 inch = 2.54 cm.

**TABLE R301.3(2)**  
**INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS**

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP Units	SI Units
1	9000 < CDD50°F	5000 < CDD10°C
2	6300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3A and 3B	4500 < CDD50°F ≤ 6300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2500 < CDD10°C ≤ 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
4A and 4B	CDD50°F ≤ 4500 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	CDD10°C ≤ 2500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
3C	HDD65°F ≤ 3600	HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4C	3600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	5400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7200	3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

## SECTION R302 DESIGN CONDITIONS

**R302.1 Interior design conditions.** The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

## SECTION R303 MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

**R303.1 Identification.** Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

**R303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation.** An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation that is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification that indicates the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and the *R*-value of the installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be on a label on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

**Exception:** For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code* or Table R906.2 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

**R303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof and ceiling insulation.** The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof and ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at

not less than one for every 300 square feet (28 m<sup>2</sup>) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. The thickness and installed *R*-value of sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be indicated on the certification provided by the insulation installer.

**R303.1.2 Insulation mark installation.** Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable at inspection.

**R303.1.3 Fenestration product rating.** *U*-factors of fenestration products such as windows, doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

**Exception:** Where required, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

*U*-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table R303.1.3(1) or R303.1.3(2). The *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products such as windows, glazed doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table R303.1.3(3).

**R303.1.4 Insulation product rating.** The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulation shall be determined in accordance with Part 460 of US-FTC CFR Title 16 in units of h • ft<sup>2</sup> • °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

**R303.1.4.1 Insulated siding.** The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**TABLE R303.1.3(1)**  
**DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW,  
GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT U-FACTORS**

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single pane	Double pane	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block		0.60		

**TABLE R303.1.3(2)**  
**DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR U-FACTORS**

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE U-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, not exceeding 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

**TABLE R303.1.3(3)**  
**DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT**

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

**R303.2 Installation.** Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code* or the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

**R303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation.** Insulation applied to the exterior of *basement walls*, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

**R303.3 Maintenance information.** Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance. Required regular maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily *accessible* label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.



## CHAPTER 4 [RE]

# RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 4 provides requirements for the thermal envelope of a building, including minimum insulation values for walls, ceiling and floors; maximum fenestration U-factors; minimum fenestration solar heat gain coefficients; and methods for determining building assembly and a total building U-factor. A performance alternative and an energy rating alternative are also provided to allow for energy code compliance other than by the prescriptive method.

## SECTION R401 GENERAL

**R401.1 Scope.** This chapter applies to *residential buildings*.

**R401.2 Compliance.** Projects shall comply with one of the following:

1. Sections R401 through R404.
2. Section R405 and the provisions of Sections R401 through R404 indicated as "Mandatory."
3. The energy rating index (ERI) approach in Section R406.

**R401.2.1 Tropical zone.** *Residential buildings* in the tropical zone at elevations less than 2,400 feet (731.5 m) above sea level shall be deemed to be in compliance with this chapter provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Not more than one-half of the occupied space is air conditioned.
2. The occupied space is not heated.
3. Solar, wind or other renewable energy source supplies not less than 80 percent of the energy for service water heating.
4. Glazing in *conditioned spaces* has a *solar heat gain coefficient* of less than or equal to 0.40, or has an overhang with a projection factor equal to or greater than 0.30.
5. Permanently installed lighting is in accordance with Section R404.
6. The exterior roof surface complies with one of the options in Table C402.3 or the roof or ceiling has insulation with an *R*-value of R-15 or greater. Where attics are present, attics above the insulation are vented and attics below the insulation are unvented.
7. Roof surfaces have a slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope). The finished roof does not have water accumulation areas.
8. Operable fenestration provides a ventilation area of not less than 14 percent of the floor area in each room. Alternatively, equivalent ventilation is provided by a ventilation fan.
9. Bedrooms with *exterior walls* facing two different directions have operable fenestration on *exterior walls* facing two directions.
10. Interior doors to bedrooms are capable of being secured in the open position.

11. A ceiling fan or ceiling fan rough-in is provided for bedrooms and the largest space that is not used as a bedroom.

**R401.3 Certificate (Mandatory).** A permanent certificate shall be completed by the builder or other *approved* party and posted on a wall in the space where the furnace is located, a utility room or an *approved* location inside the *building*. Where located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. The certificate shall indicate the predominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundation components such as slabs, *basement walls*, crawl space walls and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces*; *U*-factors of fenestration and the *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) of fenestration, and the results from any required duct system and *building envelope* air leakage testing performed on the *building*. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall indicate the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall indicate the types and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water heating equipment. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate "gas-fired unvented room heater," "electric furnace" or "baseboard electric heater," as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be indicated for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces and electric baseboard heaters.

## SECTION R402 BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

**R402.1 General (Prescriptive).** The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the requirements of Sections R402.1.1 through R402.1.5.

### Exceptions:

1. The following low-energy *buildings*, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the *building* by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section R402.
  - 1.1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than  $3.4 \text{ Btu/h} \cdot \text{ft}^2 (10.7 \text{ W/m}^2)$  or  $1.0 \text{ watt/ft}^2$  of floor area for space-conditioning purposes.
  - 1.2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.
2. Log homes designed in accordance with ICC 400.

## RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

**R402.1.1 Vapor retarder.** Wall assemblies in the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the vapor retarder requirements of Section R702.7 of the *International Residential Code* or Section 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*, as applicable.

**R402.1.2 Insulation and fenestration criteria.** The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Table R402.1.2, based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3.

**R402.1.3 R-value computation.** Insulation material used in layers, such as framing *cavity insulation* or continuous

insulation, shall be summed to compute the corresponding component *R*-value. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown-in insulation. Computed *R*-values shall not include an *R*-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table R402.1.2, the manufacturer's labeled *R*-value for the insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

**R402.1.4 U-factor alternative.** An assembly with a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.4 shall be an alternative to the *R*-value in Table R402.1.2.

TABLE R402.1.2  
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT<sup>a</sup>

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR <sup>b</sup>	SKYLIGHT <sup>b</sup> U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC <sup>b, e</sup>	CEILING R-VALUE	WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE	MASS WALL R-VALUE <sup>c</sup>	FLOOR R-VALUE	BASEMENT <sup>c</sup> WALL R-VALUE	SLAB <sup>d</sup> R-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE <sup>c</sup> WALL R-VALUE
1	NR	0.75	0.25	30	13	3/4	13	0	0	0
2	0.40	0.65	0.25	38	13	4/6	13	0	0	0
3	0.32	0.55	0.25	38	20 or 13+5 <sup>h</sup>	8/13	19	5/13 <sup>f</sup>	0	5/13
4 except Marine	0.32	0.55	0.40	49	20 or 13+5 <sup>h</sup>	8/13	19	10/13	10, 2 ft	10/13
5 and Marine 4	0.30	0.55	NR	49	20 or 13+5 <sup>h</sup>	13/17	30 <sup>g</sup>	15/19	10, 2 ft	15/19
6	0.30	0.55	NR	49	20+5 <sup>h</sup> or 13+10 <sup>h</sup>	15/20	30 <sup>g</sup>	15/19	10, 4 ft	15/19
7 and 8	0.30	0.55	NR	49	20+5 <sup>h</sup> or 13+10 <sup>h</sup>	19/21	38 <sup>g</sup>	15/19	10, 4 ft	15/19

NR = Not Required.

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. Where insulation is installed in a cavity that is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall be not less than the *R*-value specified in the table.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

**Exception:** In Climate Zones 1 through 3, skylights shall be permitted to be excluded from glazed fenestration SHGC requirements provided that the SHGC for such skylights does not exceed 0.30.

c. "10/13" means R-10 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the basement wall.

"15/19" means R-15 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home or R-19 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall. Alternatively, compliance with "15/19" shall be R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the basement wall plus R-5 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home.

d. R-5 insulation shall be provided under the full slab area of a heated slab in addition to the required slab edge insulation *R*-value for slabs, as indicated in the table. The slab edge insulation for heated slabs shall not be required to extend below the slab.

e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.

g. Alternatively, insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity and providing not less than an *R*-value of R-19.

h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation. Therefore, as an example, "13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation.

i. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. The second *R*-value applies where more than half of the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

TABLE R402.1.4  
EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS<sup>a</sup>

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	CEILING U-FACTOR	FRAME WALL U-FACTOR	MASS WALL U-FACTOR <sup>b</sup>	FLOOR U-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR
1	0.50	0.75	0.035	0.084	0.197	0.064	0.360	0.477
2	0.40	0.65	0.030	0.084	0.165	0.064	0.360	0.477
3	0.32	0.55	0.030	0.060	0.098	0.047	0.091 <sup>c</sup>	0.136
4 except Marine	0.32	0.55	0.026	0.060	0.098	0.047	0.059	0.065
5 and Marine 4	0.30	0.55	0.026	0.060	0.082	0.033	0.050	0.055
6	0.30	0.55	0.026	0.045	0.060	0.033	0.050	0.055
7 and 8	0.30	0.55	0.026	0.045	0.057	0.028	0.050	0.055

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. Where more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall not exceed 0.17 in Climate Zone 1, 0.14 in Climate Zone 2, 0.12 in Climate Zone 3, 0.087 in Climate Zone 4 except Marine, 0.065 in Climate Zone 5 and Marine 4, and 0.057 in Climate Zones 6 through 8.

c. In warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1, the basement wall *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.360.

**R402.1.5 Total UA alternative.** Where the total *building thermal envelope* UA, the sum of *U-factor* times assembly area, is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from multiplying the *U-factors* in Table R402.1.4 by the same assembly area as in the proposed *building*, the *building* shall be considered to be in compliance with Table R402.1.2. The UA calculation shall be performed using a method consistent with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. In addition to UA compliance, the SHGC requirements shall be met.

**R402.2 Specific insulation requirements (Prescriptive).** In addition to the requirements of Section R402.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections R402.2.1 through R402.2.13.

**R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces.** Where Section R402.1.2 requires R-38 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-30 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-38 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Where Section R402.1.2 requires R-49 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-38 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-49 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the *U-factor* alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R402.2.2 Ceilings without attic spaces.** Where Section R402.1.2 requires insulation *R*-values greater than R-30 in the ceiling and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation *R*-value for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. Insulation shall extend over the top of the wall plate to the outer edge of such plate and shall not be compressed. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section R402.1.2 shall be limited to 500 square feet ( $46\text{ m}^2$ ) or 20 percent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the *U-factor* alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R402.2.3 Eave baffle.** For air-permeable insulations in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit and eave vents. Baffles shall maintain an opening equal or greater than the size of the vent. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material.

**R402.2.4 Access hatches and doors.** Access doors from *conditioned spaces* to *unconditioned spaces* such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to a level equivalent to the insulation on the surrounding surfaces. Access that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation shall be provided to all equipment. Where loose-fill insulation is installed, a wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer shall be installed to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened. The baffle or retainer shall

provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose-fill insulation.

**Exception:** Vertical doors providing access from *conditioned spaces* to *unconditioned spaces* that comply with the fenestration requirements of Table R402.1.2 based on the applicable *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3.

**R402.2.5 Mass walls.** Mass walls where used as a component of the *building thermal envelope* shall be one of the following:

1. Above-ground walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form, masonry cavity, brick but not brick veneer, adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth, solid timber or solid logs.
2. Any wall having a heat capacity greater than or equal to  $6\text{ Btu/ft}^2 \cdot ^\circ\text{F}$  ( $123\text{ kJ/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}$ ).

**R402.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors.** Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall comply with the

TABLE R402.2.6  
STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL  
AND FLOOR INSULATION *R*-VALUES

WOOD FRAME <i>R</i> -VALUE REQUIREMENT	COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAME EQUIVALENT <i>R</i> -VALUE <sup>a</sup>
<b>Steel Truss Ceilings<sup>b</sup></b>	
R-30	R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5
R-38	R-49 or R-38 + 3
R-49	R-38 + 5
<b>Steel Joist Ceilings<sup>b</sup></b>	
R-30	R-38 in $2 \times 4$ or $2 \times 6$ or $2 \times 8$ R-49 in any framing
R-38	R-49 in $2 \times 4$ or $2 \times 6$ or $2 \times 8$ or $2 \times 10$
<b>Steel-Framed Wall, 16 inches on center</b>	
R-13	R-13 + 4.2 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 6.1 or R-15 + 5.7 or R-19 + 5.0 or R-21 + 4.7
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-19 + 6.2 or R-21 + 7.5
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.3 or R-25 + 10.9
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7
<b>Steel Framed Wall, 24 inches on center</b>	
R-13	R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 4.9 or R-15 + 4.3 or R-19 + 3.5 or R-21 + 3.1
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9
<b>Steel Joist Floor</b>	
R-13	R-19 in $2 \times 6$ , or R-19 + 6 in $2 \times 8$ or $2 \times 10$
R-19	R-19 + 6 in $2 \times 6$ , or R-19 + 12 in $2 \times 8$ or $2 \times 10$

a. The first value is cavity insulation *R*-value, the second value is continuous insulation *R*-value. Therefore, for example, "R-30+3" means R-30 cavity insulation plus R-3 continuous insulation.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

insulation requirements of Table R402.2.6 or the *U*-factor requirements of Table R402.1.4. The calculation of the *U*-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

**R402.2.7 Walls with partial structural sheathing.** Where Section R402.1.2 requires continuous insulation on *exterior walls* and structural sheathing covers 40 percent or less of the gross area of all *exterior walls*, the required continuous insulation *R*-value shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary, but not more than R-3 to result in a consistent total sheathing thickness on areas of the walls covered by structural sheathing. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R402.2.8 Floors.** Floor framing-*cavity insulation* shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking.

**Exception:** As an alternative, the floor framing-*cavity insulation* shall be in contact with the topside of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor framing where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum wood frame wall *R*-value in Table R402.1.2 and that extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.

**R402.2.9 Basement walls.** Walls associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall comply with this requirement except where the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections R402.1.2 and R402.2.8.

**R402.2.10 Slab-on-grade floors.** Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.2. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table R402.1.2 by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the *building*. Insulation extending away from the *building* shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*. Slab-edge insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the *code official* as having a very heavy termite infestation.

**R402.2.11 Crawl space walls.** As an alternative to insulating floors over crawl spaces, crawl space walls shall be insulated provided that the crawl space is not vented to the outdoors. Crawl space wall insulation shall be permanently fastened to the wall and shall extend downward from the floor to the finished grade elevation and then vertically or horizontally for not less than an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space

foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder in accordance with the *International Building Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (153 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) up stem walls and shall be attached to the stem walls.

**R402.2.12 Masonry veneer.** Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of a foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

**R402.2.13 Sunroom insulation.** *Sunrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

**Exception:** For *sunrooms* with *thermal isolation*, and enclosing *conditioned space*, the following exceptions to the insulation requirements of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation *R*-values shall be R-19 in *Climate Zones* 1 through 4 and R-24 in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8.
2. The minimum wall insulation *R*-value shall be R-13 in all *climate zones*. Walls separating a *sunroom* with a *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

**R402.3 Fenestration (Prescriptive).** In addition to the requirements of Section R402, fenestration shall comply with Sections R402.3.1 through R402.3.5.

**R402.3.1 U-factor.** An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements.

**R402.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC.** An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table R402.1.2 provided that the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the dynamic glazing is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall be prohibited.

**Exception:** Dynamic glazing shall not be required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC comply with the requirements of Table R402.1.2.

**R402.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption.** Not greater than 15 square feet (1.4 m<sup>2</sup>) of glazed fenestration per dwelling unit shall be exempt from the *U*-factor and SHGC requirements in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R402.3.4 Opaque door exemption.** One side-hinged opaque door assembly not greater than 24 square feet (2.22 m<sup>2</sup>) in area shall be exempt from the *U*-factor requirement in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not

apply to the *U*-factor alternative in Section R402.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

**R402.3.5 Sunroom fenestration.** *Sunrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* shall comply with the fenestration requirements of this code.

**Exception:** In *Climate Zones* 2 through 8, for *sunrooms* with *thermal isolation* and enclosing *conditioned space*, the fenestration *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.45 and the *skylight* *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.70.

New fenestration separating the *sunroom* with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

**R402.4 Air leakage (Mandatory).** The *building thermal envelope* shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections R402.4.1 through R402.4.5.

**R402.4.1 Building thermal envelope.** The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Sections R402.4.1.1 and R402.4.1.2. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction.

**R402.4.1.1 Installation.** The components of the *building thermal envelope* as indicated in Table R402.4.1.1 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the criteria indicated in Table R402.4.1.1, as applicable to the method of construction. Where required by the *code official*, an *approved* third party shall inspect all components and verify compliance.

**R402.4.1.2 Testing.** The *building* or dwelling unit shall be tested and verified as having an air leakage rate not exceeding five air changes per hour in *Climate Zones* 1 and 2, and three air changes per hour in *Climate Zones* 3 through 8. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the *building thermal envelope*.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed, beyond the intended weatherstripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers shall be closed, but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, where installed at the time of the test, shall be open.
4. Exterior or interior terminations for continuous ventilation systems shall be sealed.

5. Heating and cooling systems, where installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.

6. Supply and return registers, where installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.

**R402.4.2 Fireplaces.** New wood-burning fireplaces shall have tight-fitting flue dampers or doors, and outdoor combustion air. Where using tight-fitting doors on factory-built fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 127, the doors shall be tested and *listed* for the fireplace.

**R402.4.3 Fenestration air leakage.** Windows, *skylights* and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of not greater than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m<sup>2</sup>), and for swinging doors, not greater than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m<sup>2</sup>), when tested in accordance with NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory and *listed* and labeled by the manufacturer.

**Exception:** Site-built windows, *skylights* and doors.

**R402.4.4 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** In *Climate Zones* 3 through 8, where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the *building thermal envelope* or enclosed in a room that is isolated from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table R402.1.2, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet not less than the *basement wall R-value* requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section R403. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through *conditioned space* to an *R-value* of not less than R-8.

**Exceptions:**

1. Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.
2. Fireplaces and stoves complying with Section R402.4.2 and Section R1006 of the *International Residential Code*.

**R402.4.5 Recessed lighting.** Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and *unconditioned spaces*. Recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and *labeled* as having an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulked between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

**R402.5 Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC (Mandatory).** The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using tradeoffs from Section R402.1.5 or R405 shall be 0.48 in *Climate Zones* 4 and 5 and 0.40 in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8 for vertical fenestration, and 0.75 in *Climate Zones* 4 through 8 for *skylights*. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using tradeoffs from Section R405 in *Climate Zones* 1 through 3 shall be 0.50.

**TABLE R402.4.1.1**  
**AIR BARRIER AND INSULATION INSTALLATION<sup>a</sup>**

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA
General requirements	A continuous air barrier shall be installed in the building envelope. The exterior thermal envelope contains a continuous air barrier. Breaks or joints in the air barrier shall be sealed.	Air-permeable insulation shall not be used as a sealing material.
Ceiling/attic	The air barrier in any dropped ceiling or soffit shall be aligned with the insulation and any gaps in the air barrier shall be sealed. Access openings, drop down stairs or knee wall doors to unconditioned attic spaces shall be sealed.	The insulation in any dropped ceiling/soffit shall be aligned with the air barrier.
Walls	The junction of the foundation and sill plate shall be sealed. The junction of the top plate and the top of exterior walls shall be sealed. Knee walls shall be sealed.	Cavities within corners and headers of frame walls shall be insulated by completely filling the cavity with a material having a thermal resistance, <i>R</i> -value, of not less than R-3 per inch. Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls shall be installed in substantial contact and continuous alignment with the air barrier.
Windows, skylights and doors	The space between framing and skylights, and the jambs of windows and doors, shall be sealed.	—
Rim joists	Rim joists shall include the air barrier.	Rim joists shall be insulated.
Floors, including cantilevered floors and floors above garages	The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.	Floor framing cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of subfloor decking. Alternatively, floor framing cavity insulation shall be in contact with the top side of sheathing, or continuous insulation installed on the underside of floor framing; and shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.
Crawl space walls	Exposed earth in unvented crawl spaces shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder with overlapping joints taped.	Crawl space insulation, where provided instead of floor insulation, shall be permanently attached to the walls.
Shafts, penetrations	Duct shafts, utility penetrations, and flue shafts opening to exterior or unconditioned space shall be sealed.	—
Narrow cavities	—	Batts to be installed in narrow cavities shall be cut to fit or narrow cavities shall be filled with insulation that on installation readily conforms to the available cavity space.
Garage separation	Air sealing shall be provided between the garage and conditioned spaces.	—
Recessed lighting	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the finished surface.	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be air tight and IC rated.
Plumbing and wiring	—	In exterior walls, batt insulation shall be cut neatly to fit around wiring and plumbing, or insulation, that on installation readily conforms to available space, shall extend behind piping and wiring.
Shower/tub on exterior wall	The air barrier installed at exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall separate the wall from the shower or tub.	Exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall be insulated.
Electrical/phone box on exterior walls	The air barrier shall be installed behind electrical and communication boxes. Alternatively, air-sealed boxes shall be installed.	—
HVAC register boots	HVAC supply and return register boots that penetrate building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the subfloor, wall covering or ceiling penetrated by the boot.	—
Concealed sprinklers	Where required to be sealed, concealed fire sprinklers shall only be sealed in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.	—

a. Inspection of log walls shall be in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

## SECTION R403 SYSTEMS

**R403.1 Controls (Mandatory).** Not less than one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

**R403.1.1 Programmable thermostat.** The thermostat controlling the primary heating or cooling system of the dwelling unit shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature setpoints at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain *zone* temperatures of not less than 55°F (13°C) to not greater than 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall be programmed initially by the manufacturer with a heating temperature setpoint of not greater than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature setpoint of not less than 78°F (26°C).

**R403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory).** Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

**R403.2 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback.** Hot water boilers that supply heat to the *building* through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that decreases the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

**R403.3 Ducts.** Ducts and air handlers shall be installed in accordance with Sections R403.3.1 through R403.3.7.

**R403.3.1 Insulation (Prescriptive).** Supply and return ducts in attics shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and larger and not less than R-6 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Supply and return ducts in other portions of the *building* shall be insulated to not less than R-6 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and not less than R-4.2 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.

**Exception:** Ducts or portions thereof located completely inside the *building thermal envelope*.

**R403.3.2 Sealing (Mandatory).** Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the *International Mechanical Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

**R403.3.2.1 Sealed air handler.** Air handlers shall have a manufacturer's designation for an air leakage of not greater than 2 percent of the design airflow rate when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 193.

**R403.3.3 Duct testing (Mandatory).** Ducts shall be pressure tested to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

### Exceptions:

1. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required where the ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*.
2. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts serving heat or energy recovery ventilators that are not integrated with ducts serving heating or cooling systems.

A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*.

**R403.3.4 Duct leakage (Prescriptive).** The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section R403.3.3, shall be as follows:

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area.

**R403.3.5 Building cavities (Mandatory).** *Building* framing cavities shall not be used as ducts or plenums.

**R403.3.6 Ducts buried within ceiling insulation.** Where supply and return air ducts are partially or completely buried in ceiling insulation, such ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. The supply and return ducts shall have an insulation *R*-value not less than R-8.
2. At all points along each duct, the sum of the ceiling insulation *R*-value against and above the top of the duct, and against and below the bottom of the duct, shall be not less than R-19, excluding the *R*-value of the duct insulation.
3. In Climate Zones 1A, 2A and 3A, the supply ducts shall be completely buried within ceiling insulation, insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-13 and in compliance with the vapor retarder requirements of Section 604.11 of the *International Mechanical Code* or Section M1601.4.6 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

**Exception:** Sections of the supply duct that are less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply outlet shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

**R403.3.6.1 Effective R-value of deeply buried ducts.** Where using a simulated energy performance analysis, sections of ducts that are: installed in accordance with Section R403.3.6; located directly on, or within 5.5 inches (140 mm) of the ceiling; surrounded with blown-in attic insulation having an *R*-value of R-30 or greater and located such that the top of the duct is not less than 3.5 inches (89 mm) below the top of the insulation, shall be considered as having an effective duct insulation *R*-value of R-25.

**R403.3.7 Ducts located in conditioned space.** For ducts to be considered as inside a conditioned space, such ducts shall comply with either of the following:

1. The duct system shall be located completely within the continuous air barrier and within the building thermal envelope.
2. The ducts shall be buried within ceiling insulation in accordance with Section R403.3.6 and all of the following conditions shall exist:
  - 2.1. The air handler is located completely within the *continuous air barrier* and within the building thermal envelope.
  - 2.2. The duct leakage, as measured either by a rough-in test of the ducts or a post-construction total system leakage test to outside the building thermal envelope in accordance with Section R403.3.4, is less than or equal to 1.5 cubic feet per minute (42.5 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area served by the duct system.
  - 2.3. The ceiling insulation *R*-value installed against and above the insulated duct is greater than or equal to the proposed ceiling insulation *R*-value, less the *R*-value of the insulation on the duct.

**R403.4 Mechanical system piping insulation (Mandatory).** Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids greater than 105°F (41°C) or less than 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.

**R403.4.1 Protection of piping insulation.** Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind. The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall be prohibited.

**R403.5 Service hot water systems.** Energy conservation measures for service hot water systems shall be in accordance with Sections R403.5.1 through R403.5.4.

**R403.5.1 Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems (Mandatory).** Heated water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.2. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be *accessible*. Manual controls shall be readily *accessible*.

**R403.5.1.1 Circulation systems.** Heated water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermosyphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy. The controls shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is no demand for hot water.

**R403.5.1.2 Heat trace systems.** Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1 or UL 515. Controls for such systems shall automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy.

**R403.5.2 Demand recirculation water systems.** *Demand recirculation water systems* shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104°F (40°C).

**R403.5.3 Hot water pipe insulation (Prescriptive).** Insulation for hot water piping with a thermal resistance, *R*-value, of not less than R-3 shall be applied to the following:

1. Piping  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) and larger in nominal diameter.
2. Piping serving more than one dwelling unit.
3. Piping located outside the *conditioned space*.
4. Piping from the water heater to a distribution manifold.
5. Piping located under a floor slab.
6. Buried piping.
7. Supply and return piping in recirculation systems other than demand recirculation systems.

**R403.5.4 Drain water heat recovery units.** Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Drain water heat recovery units shall be tested in accordance with CSA B55.1. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for individual units connected to one or two showers. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 2 psi (13.8 kPa) for individual units connected to three or more showers.

**R403.6 Mechanical ventilation (Mandatory).** The *building* shall be provided with ventilation that complies with the requirements of the *International Residential Code* or *International Mechanical Code*, as applicable, or with other

*approved* means of ventilation. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.

**R403.6.1 Whole-house mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy.** Fans used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table R403.6.1.

**Exception:** Where an air handler that is integral to tested and *listed* HVAC equipment is used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation, the air handler shall be powered by an electronically commutated motor.

**R403.7 Equipment sizing and efficiency rating (Mandatory).** Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on *building* loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New or replacement heating and cooling equipment shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the equipment is installed.

**R403.8 Systems serving multiple dwelling units (Mandatory).** Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall comply with Sections C403 and C404 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*—Commercial Provisions instead of Section R403.

**R403.9 Snow melt and ice system controls (Mandatory).** Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is greater than 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is greater than 40°F (4.8°C).

**R403.10 Pools and permanent spa energy consumption (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be in accordance with Sections R403.10.1 through R403.10.3.

**R403.10.1 Heaters.** The electric power to heaters shall be controlled by a readily *accessible* on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

**R403.10.2 Time switches.** Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

**R403.10.3 Covers.** Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover or other *approved* vapor-retardant means.

**Exception:** Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operation season of not less than three calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

**R403.11 Portable spas (Mandatory).** The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

**R403.12 Residential pools and permanent residential spas.** Residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas that are accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and that are available only to the household and its guests shall be in accordance with APSP 15.

## SECTION R404 ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

**R404.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory).** Not less than 90 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy lamps.

**R404.1.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory).** Fuel gas lighting systems shall not have continuously burning pilot lights.

## SECTION R405 SIMULATED PERFORMANCE ALTERNATIVE (PERFORMANCE)

**R405.1 Scope.** This section establishes criteria for compliance using simulated energy performance analysis. Such

TABLE R403.6.1  
WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM FAN EFFICACY<sup>a</sup>

FAN LOCATION	AIR FLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)	AIR FLOW RATE MAXIMUM (CFM)
HRV or ERV	Any	1.2 cfm/watt	Any
Range hoods	Any	2.8 cfm/watt	Any
In-line fan	Any	2.8 cfm/watt	Any
Bathroom, utility room	10	1.4 cfm/watt	< 90
Bathroom, utility room	90	2.8 cfm/watt	Any

For SI: 1 cfm = 28.3 L/min.

a. When tested in accordance with HVI Standard 916.

analysis shall include heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water heating energy only.

**R405.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires that the mandatory provisions identified in Section R401.2 be met. Supply and return ducts not completely inside the *building thermal envelope* shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-6.

**R405.3 Performance-based compliance.** Compliance based on simulated energy performance requires that a proposed residence (*proposed design*) be shown to have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. *Code officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.

**Exception:** The energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu or Btu per square foot of *conditioned floor area* shall be permitted to be substituted for the energy cost. The source energy multiplier for electricity shall be 3.16. The source energy multiplier for fuels other than electricity shall be 1.1.

**R405.4 Documentation.** Documentation of the software used for the performance design and the parameters for the *building* shall be in accordance with Sections R405.4.1 through R405.4.3.

**R405.4.1 Compliance software tools.** Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of the compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official*.

**R405.4.2 Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.3. A compliance report on the *proposed design* shall be submitted with the application for the *building* permit. Upon completion of the *building*, a compliance report based on the as-built condition of the *building* shall be submitted to the *code official* before a certificate of occupancy is issued. Batch sampling of *buildings* to determine energy code compliance shall only be allowed for stacked multiple-family units.

Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections R405.4.2.1 and R405.4.2.2. Where the *proposed design* of a *building* could be built on different sites where the cardinal orientation of the building on each site is different, compliance of the *proposed design* for the purposes of the application for the building permit shall be based on the worst-case orientation, worst-case configuration, worst-case *building* air leakage and worst-case duct leakage. Such worst-case parameters shall be used as inputs to the compliance software for energy analysis.

**R405.4.2.1 Compliance report for permit application.** A compliance report submitted with the application for building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.

2. A statement indicating that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.3.

3. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as indicated in Table R405.5.2(1). The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* with user inputs to the compliance software to generate the results.

4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section R405.3.

5. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.

6. The name and version of the compliance software tool.

**R405.4.2.2 Compliance report for certificate of occupancy.** A compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.

2. A statement indicating that the as-built building complies with Section R405.3.

3. A certificate indicating that the building passes the performance matrix for code compliance and indicating the energy saving features of the buildings.

4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section R405.3.

5. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.

6. The name and version of the compliance software tool.

**R405.4.3 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.

2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in Table R405.5.2(1).

3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the *proposed design*.

**R405.5 Calculation procedure.** Calculations of the performance design shall be in accordance with Sections R405.5.1 and R405.5.2.

**R405.5.1 General.** Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

**R405.5.2 Residence specifications.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table R405.5.2(1). Table R405.5.2(1) shall include, by reference, all notes contained in Table R402.1.2.

**TABLE R405.5.2(1)**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS**

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass, where the proposed wall is a mass wall; otherwise, wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Basement and crawl space walls	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4, with the insulation layer on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4.	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4.	As proposed
Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with an aperture of 1 ft <sup>2</sup> per 300 ft <sup>2</sup> of ceiling area.	As proposed
Foundations	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Foundation wall area above and below grade and soil characteristics: same as proposed.	As proposed
Opaque doors	Area: 40 ft <sup>2</sup> .	As proposed
	Orientation: North.	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: same as fenestration as specified Table R402.1.4.	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Total area <sup>h</sup> =  (a) The proposed glazing area, where the proposed glazing area is less than 15 percent of the conditioned floor area (b) 15 percent of the conditioned floor area, where the proposed glazing area is 15 percent or more of the conditioned floor area.	As proposed
	Orientation: equally distributed to four cardinal compass orientations (N, E, S & W).	As proposed
	<i>U</i> -factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4.	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table R402.1.2 except for climate zones without an SHGC requirement, the SHGC shall be equal to 0.40.	As proposed
	Interior shade fraction: 0.92-(0.21 × SHGC for the standard reference design).	Interior shade fraction: 0.92-(0.21 × SHGC as proposed)
Skylights	External shading: none.	As proposed
	None.	As proposed
Thermally isolated sunrooms	None.	As proposed
Air exchange rate	The air leakage rate at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa) shall be  <i>Climate Zones 1 and 2: 5 air changes per hour.</i> <i>Climate Zones 3 through 8: 3 air changes per hour.</i>	The measured air exchange rate. <sup>a</sup>
	The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be the same as in the proposed design, but not greater than $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where: <i>CFA</i> = conditioned floor area, ft <sup>2</sup> . <i>N<sub>br</sub></i> = number of bedrooms.	The mechanical ventilation rate <sup>b</sup> shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.
	Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.	

(continued)

**TABLE R405.5.2(1)—continued**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS**

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Mechanical ventilation	Where mechanical ventilation is not specified in the proposed design: None Where mechanical ventilation is specified in the proposed design, the annual vent fan energy use, in units of kWh/yr, shall equal: $(1/e_f) \times [0.0876 \times CFA + 65.7 \times (N_{br} + 1)]$ where: $e_f$ = the minimum exhaust fan efficacy, as specified in Table R403.6.1, corresponding to a flow rate of $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ CFA = conditioned floor area, $\text{ft}^2$ . $N_{br}$ = number of bedrooms.	As proposed
Internal gains	IGain, in units of Btu/day per dwelling unit, shall equal: $17,900 + 23.8 \times CFA + 4,104 \times N_{br}$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, $\text{ft}^2$ . $N_{br}$ = number of bedrooms.	Same as standard reference design.
Internal mass	Internal mass for furniture and contents: 8 pounds per square foot of floor area.	Same as standard reference design, plus any additional mass specifically designed as a thermal storage element <sup>c</sup> but not integral to the building envelope or structure.
Structural mass	For masonry floor slabs: 80 percent of floor area covered by R-2 carpet and pad, and 20 percent of floor directly exposed to room air.	As proposed
	For masonry basement walls: as proposed, but with insulation as specified in Table R402.1.4, located on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
	For other walls, ceilings, floors, and interior walls: wood frame construction.	As proposed
Heating systems <sup>d, e</sup>	For other than electric heating without a heat pump: as proposed. Where the proposed design utilizes electric heating without a heat pump, the standard reference design shall be an air source heat pump meeting the requirements of Section C403 of the IECC—Commercial Provisions. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed
Cooling systems <sup>d, f</sup>	As proposed. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed
Service water heating <sup>d, e, f, g</sup>	As proposed. Use: same as proposed design.	As proposed Use, in units of $\text{gal/day} = 30 + (10 \times N_{br})$ where: $N_{br}$ = number of bedrooms.
Thermal distribution systems	Duct insulation: in accordance with Section R403.3.1.  A thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) of 0.88 shall be applied to both the heating and cooling system efficiencies for all systems other than tested duct systems. <b>Exception:</b> For nonducted heating and cooling systems that do not have a fan, the standard reference design thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) shall be 1.  For tested duct systems, the leakage rate shall be 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per $100 \text{ ft}^2$ ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ) of <i>conditioned floor area</i> at a pressure of differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa).	Duct insulation: as proposed.  As tested or, where not tested, as specified in Table R405.5.2(2)
Thermostat	Type: Manual, cooling temperature setpoint = $75^\circ\text{F}$ ; heating temperature setpoint = $72^\circ\text{F}$ .	Same as standard reference design.

*(continued)*

**TABLE R405.5.2(1)—continued**  
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS**

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.093 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 British thermal unit = 1055 J, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 gallon (US) = 3.785 L, °C = (°F - 32)/1.8, 1 degree = 0.79 rad.

- a. Where required by the code official, testing shall be conducted by an approved party. Hourly calculations as specified in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, or the equivalent, shall be used to determine the energy loads resulting from infiltration.
- b. The combined air exchange rate for infiltration and mechanical ventilation shall be determined in accordance with Equation 43 of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.24 and the “Whole-house Ventilation” provisions of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.19 for intermittent mechanical ventilation.
- c. Thermal storage element shall mean a component that is not part of the floors, walls or ceilings that is part of a passive solar system, and that provides thermal storage such as enclosed water columns, rock beds, or phase-change containers. A thermal storage element shall be in the same room as fenestration that faces within 15 degrees (0.26 rad) of true south, or shall be connected to such a room with pipes or ducts that allow the element to be actively charged.
- d. For a proposed design with multiple heating, cooling or water heating systems using different fuel types, the applicable standard reference design system capacities and fuel types shall be weighted in accordance with their respective loads as calculated by accepted engineering practice for each equipment and fuel type present.
- e. For a proposed design without a proposed heating system, a heating system having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and proposed design.
- f. For a proposed design home without a proposed cooling system, an electric air conditioner having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and the proposed design.
- g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.
- h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences, and for townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:  

$$AF = A_s \times FA \times F$$

where:

$AF$  = Total glazing area.  
 $A_s$  = Standard reference design total glazing area.  
 $FA$  = (Above-grade thermal boundary gross wall area)/(above-grade boundary wall area + 0.5 × below-grade boundary wall area).  
 $F$  = (above-grade thermal boundary wall area)/(above-grade thermal boundary wall area + common wall area) or 0.56, whichever is greater.  
and where:  
Thermal boundary wall is any wall that separates conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient conditions.  
Above-grade thermal boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall component not in contact with soil.  
Below-grade boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall in soil contact.  
Common wall area is the area of walls shared with an adjoining dwelling unit. L and CFA are in the same units.

**TABLE R405.5.2(2)**  
**DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES FOR PROPOSED DESIGNS<sup>a</sup>**

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND CONDITION	FORCED AIR SYSTEMS	HYDRONIC SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>
Distribution system components located in unconditioned space	—	0.95
Untested distribution systems entirely located in conditioned space <sup>c</sup>	0.88	1
“Ductless” systems <sup>d</sup>	1	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square inch = 6895 Pa, 1 inch water gauge = 1250 Pa.

- a. Default values in this table are for untested distribution systems, which must still meet minimum requirements for duct system insulation.
- b. Hydronic systems shall mean those systems that distribute heating and cooling energy directly to individual spaces using liquids pumped through closed-loop piping and that do not depend on ducted, forced airflow to maintain space temperatures.
- c. Entire system in conditioned space shall mean that no component of the distribution system, including the air-handler unit, is located outside of the conditioned space.
- d. Ductless systems shall be allowed to have forced airflow across a coil but shall not have any ducted airflow external to the manufacturer's air-handler enclosure.

**R405.6 Calculation software tools.** Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections R405.6.1 through R405.6.3.

**R405.6.1 Minimum capabilities.** Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the *standard reference design* using only the input for the *proposed design*. The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.
2. Calculation of whole-building (as a single *zone*) sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *standard reference design* residence in accordance with Section R403.6.
3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table R405.5.2(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings such as *R-value*, *U-factor*, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

**R405.6.2 Specific approval.** Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable provisions of Section R405 shall be permitted to be *approved*. Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve such tools for a specified application or limited scope.

**R405.6.3 Input values.** When calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

## SECTION R406 ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE

**R406.1 Scope.** This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

**R406.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections R401 through R404 indicated as "Mandatory" and Section R403.5.3 be met. The *building thermal envelope* shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and *Solar Heat Gain Coefficients* in Table 402.1.1 or 402.1.3 of the 2009 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

**Exception:** Supply and return ducts not completely inside the *building thermal envelope* shall be insulated to an *R-value* of not less than R-6.

**R406.3 Energy Rating Index.** The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be determined in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301 except for buildings covered by the *International Residential Code*, the ERI Reference Design Ventilation rate shall be in accordance with Equation 4-1.

Ventilation rate, CFM =  $(0.01 \times \text{total square foot area of house}) + [7.5 \times (\text{number of bedrooms} + 1)]$

(Equation 4-1)

Energy used to recharge or refuel a vehicle used for transportation on roads that are not on the building site shall not be included in the *ERI reference design* or the *rated design*.

**R406.4 ERI-based compliance.** Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the *rated design* be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value indicated in Table R406.4 when compared to the *ERI reference design*.

TABLE R406.4  
MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX

CLIMATE ZONE	ENERGY RATING INDEX <sup>a</sup>
1	57
2	57
3	57
4	62
5	61
6	61
7	58
8	58

a. Where on-site renewable energy is included for compliance using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4, the building shall meet the mandatory requirements of Section R406.2, and the building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to the levels of efficiency and SHGC in Table R402.1.2 or Table R402.1.4 of the 2015 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

**R406.5 Verification by approved agency.** Verification of compliance with Section R406 shall be completed by an *approved* third party.

**R406.6 Documentation.** Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the *residential building* shall be in accordance with Sections R406.6.1 through R406.6.3.

**R406.6.1 Compliance software tools.** Software tools used for determining ERI shall be Approved Software Rating Tools in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301.

**R406.6.2 Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the ERI of the *rated design* complies with Sections R406.3 and R406.4. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address or other identification of the residential building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *rated design*. The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *ERI reference design* and the *rated design*, and shall document all inputs entered by the user necessary to reproduce the results.

3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

**Exception:** Where an otherwise identical building model is offered in multiple orientations, compliance for any orientation shall be permitted by documenting that the building meets the performance requirements in each of the four (north, east, south and west) cardinal orientations.

**R406.6.3 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *ERI reference design*.
2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *rated design*.
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the *rated design*.

**R406.6.4 Specific approval.** Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable sections of Section R406 shall be *approved*. Documentation demonstrating the approval of performance analysis tools in accordance with Section R406.6.1 shall be provided.

**R406.6.5 Input values.** Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from RESNET/ICC 301.



# CHAPTER 5 [RE]

## EXISTING BUILDINGS

### User note:

**About this chapter:** Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of Chapter 4 in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.

### SECTION R501 GENERAL

**R501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration, repair, addition* and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures.

**R501.1.1 Additions, alterations, or repairs: General.** *Additions, alterations, or repairs* to an existing *building, building system* or portion thereof shall comply with Section R502, R503 or R504. Unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building supply system* shall not be required to comply with this code.

**R501.2 Existing buildings.** Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building system* lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

**R501.3 Maintenance.** *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems that are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of *buildings* and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

**R501.4 Compliance.** *Alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing *buildings* and structures shall comply with the provisions for *alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and the *International Residential Code, International Building Code, International Existing Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code, International Mechanical Code, International Plumbing Code, International Property Maintenance Code, International Private Sewage Disposal Code* and NFPA 70.

**R501.5 New and replacement materials.** Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs*, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow their use in *buildings* of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

**R501.6 Historic buildings.** Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration, restoration* and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the *code official* and signed by the owner, a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

### SECTION R502 ADDITIONS

**R502.1 General.** *Additions* to an existing *building, building system* or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building system* to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building systems*. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code where the *addition* alone complies, where the existing *building* and *addition* comply with this code as a single *building*, or where the *building* with the *addition* does not use more energy than the existing *building*. *Additions* shall be in accordance with Section R502.1.1 or R502.1.2.

**R502.1.1 Prescriptive compliance.** *Additions* shall comply with Sections R502.1.1.1 through R502.1.1.4.

**R502.1.1.1 Building envelope.** New *building envelope* assemblies that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Sections R402.1, R402.2, R402.3.1 through R402.3.5, and R402.4.

**Exception:** Where *unconditioned space* is changed to *conditioned space*, the *building envelope* of the *addition* shall comply where the Total UA, as determined in Section R402.1.5, of the existing *building* and the *addition*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the Total UA generated for the existing *building*.

**R502.1.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R403.

**Exception:** Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an *addition*, duct

## EXISTING BUILDINGS

systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in *unconditioned spaces* shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section R403.3.3.

**R502.1.1.3 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R403.5.

**R502.1.1.4 Lighting.** New lighting systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R404.1.

**R502.1.2 Existing plus addition compliance (Simulated Performance Alternative).** Where *unconditioned space* is changed to *conditioned space*, the *addition* shall comply where the annual energy cost or energy use of the *addition* and the existing *building*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the existing *building* when modeled in accordance with Section R405. The *addition* and any *alterations* that are part of the project shall comply with Section R405 in its entirety.

## SECTION R503 ALTERATIONS

**R503.1 General.** *Alterations* to any *building* or structure shall comply with the requirements of the code for new construction. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*.

*Alterations* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as they relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload *existing building* systems. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure does not use more energy than the existing *building* or structure prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to existing *buildings* shall comply with Sections R503.1.1 through R503.2.

**R503.1.1 Building envelope.** *Building envelope* assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R402.1.2 or R402.1.4, Sections R402.2.1 through R402.2.13, R402.3.1, R402.3.2, R402.4.3 and R402.4.5.

**Exception:** The following *alterations* shall not be required to comply with the requirements for new construction provided that the energy use of the *building* is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
3. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
4. Roof re-cover.

5. Roofs without insulation in the cavity and where the sheathing or insulation is exposed during reroofing shall be insulated either above or below the sheathing.

6. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration assembly to be replaced.

**R503.1.1.1 Replacement fenestration.** Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U-factor* and *SHGC* as specified in Table R402.1.2. Where more than one replacement *fenestration* unit is to be installed, an area-weighted average of the *U-factor*, *SHGC* or both of all replacement *fenestration* units shall be an alternative that can be used to show compliance.

**R503.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R403.

**Exception:** Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended, duct systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in *unconditioned spaces* shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section R403.3.3.

**R503.1.3 Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R403.5.

**R503.1.4 Lighting.** New lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R404.1.

**Exception:** *Alterations* that replace less than 50 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such *alterations* do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

**R503.2 Change in space conditioning.** Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

**Exception:** Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section R405.3.

## SECTION R504 REPAIRS

**R504.1 General.** *Buildings*, structures and parts thereof shall be repaired in compliance with Section R501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance

required by Section R501.3, ordinary *repairs* exempt from *permit*, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

**R504.2 Application.** For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be *repairs*:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof *repairs*.
3. *Repairs* where only the bulb, ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

## SECTION R505 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

**R505.1 General.** Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code.

**R505.2 General.** Any space that is converted to a dwelling unit or portion thereof from another use or occupancy shall comply with this code.

**Exception:** Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost allowed by Section R405.3.



## CHAPTER 6 [RE] REFERENCED STANDARDS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** This code contains numerous references to standards promulgated by other organizations that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. Chapter 6 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard.

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section R107.

---

### AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association  
1827 Walden Office Square  
Suite 550  
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/L.S.2/A C440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**  
R402.4.3

### ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America  
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300  
Arlington, VA 22206

**Manual J—16: Residential Load Calculation Eighth Edition**  
R403.7

**Manual S—14: Residential Equipment Selection**  
R403.7

---

### APSP

The Association of Pool & Spa Professionals  
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 500  
Alexandria, VA 22314

**ANSI/APSP/ICC 14—2014: American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency**  
R403.11

**ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2011: American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spa Energy Efficiency—includes Addenda A Approved January 9, 2013**  
R403.12

---

### ASHRAE

ASHRAE  
1791 Tullie Circle NE  
Atlanta, GA 30329

**ASHRAE—2017: ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals**  
R402.1.5

**ASHRAE—2001: 2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals**  
Table R405.5.2(1)

**ASHRAE 193—2010(RA 2014): Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment**  
R403.3.2.1

---

### ASTM

ASTM International  
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

**C1363—11: Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus**

R303.1.4.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ASTM—continued

**E283—04(2012): Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen**

R402.4.4

**E779—10: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization**

R402.4.1.2

**E1827—11: Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door**

R402.4.1.2

**CSA**

CSA Group

8501 East Pleasant Valley Road  
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**

R402.4.3

**CSA B55.1—2015: Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**

R403.5.4

**CSA B55.2—2015: Drain Water Heat Recovery Units**

R403.5.4

**DASMA**

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association  
1300 Sumner Avenue  
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

**105—2016: Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors**

R303.1.3

**HVI**

Home Ventilating Institute  
1000 North Rand Road, Suite 214  
Wauconda, IL 60084

**916—09: Airflow Test Procedure**

Table R403.6.1

**ICC**

International Code Council, Inc.  
500 New Jersey Avenue NW  
6th Floor  
Washington, DC 20001

**ANSI/APSP/ICC 14—2014: American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency**

R403.11

**ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2011: American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spa Energy Efficiency—includes Addenda A Approved January 9, 2013**

R403.12

**IBC—18: International Building Code®**

R201.3, R303.1.1, R303.2, R402.1.1, R501.4

**ICC 400—17: Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures**

R402.1, Table R402.5.1.1

**IEBC—18: International Existing Building Code®**

R501.4

**IECC—18: International Energy Conservation Code®**

R101.4.1, R403.8

**IECC—15: 2015 International Energy Conservation Code®**

Table R406.4

**IECC—09: 2009 International Energy Conservation Code®**

R406.2

**2018 INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE®**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ICC—continued

**IECC—06: 2006 International Energy Conservation Code®**  
R202

**IFC—18: International Fire Code®**  
R201.3, R501.4

**IFGC—18: International Fuel Gas Code®**  
R201.3, R501.4

**IMC—18: International Mechanical Code®**  
R201.3, R403.3.2, R403.3.6, R403.6, R501.4

**IPC—18: International Plumbing Code®**  
R201.3, R501.4

**IPSDC—18: International Private Sewage Disposal Code®**  
R501.4

**IPMC—18: International Property Maintenance Code®**  
R501.4

**IRC—18: International Residential Code®**  
R201.3, R303.1.1, R303.2, R402.1.1, R402.2.11, R403.3.2, R403.3.6, R403.6, R501.4

**ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2014: Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index First Published March 7, 2014—Republished January 2016**  
R406.3

**ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380—2016: Standard for Testing Airtightness for Building Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems—Republished January 2016**  
R402.4.1.2

**IEEE**

Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.  
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor  
New York, NY 10016-5997

**515.1—2012: IEEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications**  
R403.5.1.2

**NFPA**

National Fire Protection Association  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

**70—17: National Electrical Code**  
R501.4

**NFRC**

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.  
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140  
Greenbelt, MD 20770

**100—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products U-factors**  
R303.1.3

**200—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence**  
R303.1.3

**400—2017: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage**  
R402.4.3

**RESNET**

Residential Energy Services Network, Inc.  
P.O. Box 4561  
Oceanside, CA 92052-4561

**ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2014: Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index First Published March 7, 2014—Republished January 2016**  
R406.3, R406.6.1, R406.6.5

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## RESNET—continued

**ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380—2016: Standard for Testing Airtightness for Building Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems, and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems—Republished January 2016**  
R402.4.1.2

---

UL

UL LLC  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, IL 60062

**127—11: Standard for Factory Built Fireplaces—with Revisions through May 2015**  
R402.4.2

**515—11: Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Commercial and Industrial Applications Including Revisions through July 2015**  
R403.5.1.2

---

US-FTC

United States-Federal Trade Commission  
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW  
Washington, DC 20580

**CFR Title 16 (2015): R-value Rule**  
R303.1.4

---

WDMA

Window and Door Manufacturers Association  
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20036-3309

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**  
R402.4.3

## APPENDIX RA

# SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

### User note:

**About this appendix:** Harnessing the heat or radiation from the sun's rays is a method to reduce the energy consumption of a building. Although Appendix RA does not require solar systems to be installed for a building, it does require the space(s) for installing such systems, providing pathways for connections and requiring adequate structural capacity of roof systems to support the systems.

### SECTION RA101 SCOPE

**RA101.1 General.** These provisions shall be applicable for new construction where solar-ready provisions are required.

### SECTION RA102 GENERAL DEFINITION

**SOLAR-READY ZONE.** A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

### SECTION RA103 SOLAR-READY ZONE

**RA103.1 General.** New detached one- and two-family dwellings, and townhouses with not less than 600 square feet ( $55.74 \text{ m}^2$ ) of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north shall comply with Sections RA103.2 through RA103.8.

#### Exceptions:

1. New residential buildings with a permanently installed on-site renewable energy system.
2. A building with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.

**RA103.2 Construction document requirements for solar-ready zone.** Construction documents shall indicate the solar-ready zone.

**RA103.3 Solar-ready zone area.** The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 300 square feet ( $27.87 \text{ m}^2$ ) exclusive of mandatory access or set back areas as required by the *International Fire Code*. New townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and with a total floor area less than or equal to 2,000 square feet ( $185.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) per dwelling shall have a solar-ready zone area of not less than 150 square feet ( $13.94 \text{ m}^2$ ). The solar-ready zone shall be composed of areas not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width and not less than 80 square feet ( $7.44 \text{ m}^2$ ) exclusive of access or set back areas as required by the *International Fire Code*.

**RA103.4 Obstructions.** Solar-ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including but not limited to vents, chimneys, and roof-mounted equipment.

**RA103.5 Roof load documentation.** The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents.

**RA103.6 Interconnection pathway.** Construction documents shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or plumbing from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel or service hot water system.

**RA103.7 Electrical service reserved space.** The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual pole circuit breaker for future solar electric installation and shall be labeled "For Future Solar Electric." The reserved space shall be positioned at the opposite (load) end from the input feeder location or main circuit location.

**RA103.8 Construction documentation certificate.** A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.



# INDEX

## A

<b>ACCESS HATCHES</b> . . . . .	R402.2.4
<b>ADDITION</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Requirements . . . . .	R501.1.1, R502
<b>ALTERATION</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Requirements . . . . .	503
<b>ADMINISTRATION</b> . . . . .	Chapter 1
<b>AIR BARRIER</b>	
Installation . . . . .	R402.4.1.1, Table R402.4.1.1
Testing . . . . .	R402.4.1.2
<b>AIR INFILTRATION</b>	
Requirements . . . . .	R402.4.1.2
<b>AIR LEAKAGE</b> . . . . .	R402.4, R403.3.3, R403.3.4
<b>ALTERNATE MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	R102
<b>APPROVED</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>AUTOMATIC</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>ATMOSPHERIC VENTING</b> . . . . .	Appendix RA
Worst-case testing . . . . .	RA301

## B

<b>BASEMENT WALL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Requirements . . . . .	R303.2.1, Table R402.1.2, R402.2.9, Table R405.5.2(1)
<b>BELOW-GRADE WALLS (see BASEMENT WALLS)</b>	
<b>BOARD OF APPEALS</b> . . . . .	R109
Qualifications of members . . . . .	R109.3
<b>BUILDING</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE</b>	
Air tightness . . . . .	R402.4.1
Compliance documentation . . . . .	R103.2, R401.3
Defined . . . . .	R202
Insulation . . . . .	R303.1.1
Insulation and fenestration criteria . . . . .	R402.1.2
Performance method . . . . .	Table R405.5.2(1)
Requirements . . . . .	R102.1.1, R402

## C

<b>CEILINGS</b> . . . . .	R402.2.1, R402.2.1, R402.2.2
Specification for standard reference design . . . . .	Table R405.5.2(1)
<b>CERTIFICATE</b> . . . . .	R401.3

<b>CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY</b> . . . . .	R505
<b>CIRCULATON SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	R403.5.1
<b>CLIMATE TYPES</b>	
Defined . . . . .	Table R301.3(1)
<b>CLIMATE ZONES</b> . . . . .	R301, Figure R301.1, Table R301.1
By state or territory . . . . .	Figure R301.1, Table R301.1
International climate zones . . . . .	R301.3, Table R301.3(1), Table R301.3(2)
Tropical . . . . .	R301.4
Warm humid . . . . .	R301.2, Table R301.1, Table R301.3(1)
<b>CODE OFFICIAL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>COMMERCIAL BUILDING</b>	
Compliance . . . . .	R101.5
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT</b> . . . . .	R101.5
Compliance Report . . . . .	R405.4.2.2
<b>CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>CONDITIONED SPACE</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS</b> . . . . .	R103
Amended . . . . .	R103.4
Approval . . . . .	R103.3.1
Examination . . . . .	R103.3
Information required . . . . .	R103.2
Phased . . . . .	R103.3.3
Previous . . . . .	R103.3.2
Retention . . . . .	R103.5
Thermal envelope depiction . . . . .	R103.2.1
<b>CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>CONTROLS</b>	
Heat pump . . . . .	R403.1.2
Heating and cooling . . . . .	R403.1
Service water heating . . . . .	R403.5
<b>CRAWL SPACE WALL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Requirements . . . . .	R303.2.1, Table R402.1.2, Table R402.1.4, R402.1.4, R402.2.11, Table R405.5.2(1)

## D

<b>DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION</b>	
<b>SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES</b> . . . . .	Table R405.5.2(2)
<b>DEFINITIONS</b> . . . . .	Chapter 2

## INDEX

<b>DEGREE DAY COOLING</b> . . . . .	Table R301.3(2)
<b>DEGREE DAY HEATING</b> . . . . .	Table R301.3(2)
<b>DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Requirements . . . . .	R403.5.2
<b>DESIGN CONDITIONS</b> . . . . .	Chapter 3, R302
<b>DOORS</b>	
Attics and crawl spaces . . . . .	R402.2.4
Default <i>U</i> -factors . . . . .	Table R303.1.3(2)
Opaque . . . . .	R402.3.4
Performance requirements . . . . .	Table R405.5.2(1)
SHGC values . . . . .	Table R402.1.2
<i>U</i> -factors . . . . .	R402.1.4
<b>DUCT</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Insulation . . . . .	R103.2, R401.3, R403.3.1, R403.3.1.6, R403.3.6, R403.3.7, R403.3.8
Sealing . . . . .	R103.2, R403.3.2
Tightness verification	
Postconstruction test . . . . .	R403.3.3
Rough-in test . . . . .	R403.3.3
Within conditioned space . . . . .	R403.3.7
<b>DUCT SYSTEM</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>DWELLING UNIT</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Multiple units . . . . .	R403.8
<b>DYNAMIC GLAZING</b> . . . . .	R402.3.2

**E**

<b>EAVE BAFFLE</b>	
Installation . . . . .	R402.2.3
<b>ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING</b> . . . . .	R404
<b>ENERGY ANALYSIS, ANNUAL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Documentation . . . . .	R405.4
Requirements . . . . .	R405.3
<b>ENERGY COST</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
Energy rating index . . . . .	R202, R406.3
Energy rating index compliance alternative . . . . .	R406
ERI-based compliance . . . . .	R406.4
<b>ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS</b>	
Requirements . . . . .	Table R405.5.2(1)
<b>ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>ENVELOPE, BUILDING THERMAL</b>	
Defined . . . . .	R202
<b>ENVELOPE DESIGN PROCEDURES</b> . . . . .	R402

**EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES** . . . . . R103.2, R401.3**EQUIPMENT ROOM**

For fuel burning appliance . . . . . R402.4.4

**EXISTING BUILDINGS** . . . . . Chapter 5**EXTERIOR WALL**

Defined . . . . . R202

Thermal performance . . . . . R402, R402.1.2, Table R405.5.2(1)

**F****FEES** . . . . . R104

Refunds . . . . . R104.5

Related fees . . . . . R104.4

Schedule of permit fees . . . . . R104.2

**FENESTRATION** . . . . . R303.1.3, R402.3, R402.3.2, R402.4.3    Default *U*-factors . . . . . Table R303.1.3(1)

Defined . . . . . R202

Rating and labeling . . . . . R303.1.3, R402.1.2

Replacement . . . . . R402.3.5

Requirements . . . . . Table R402.1.2

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT**

Defined . . . . . R202

**FIREPLACES** . . . . . R402.4.2**FLOORS**

Above-grade . . . . . Table R405.5.2(1)

Insulation . . . . . R402.2.6

Slab-on-grade insulation requirements . . . R402.2.10

**FOUNDATIONS**

Requirements . . . . . Table R402.4.1.1, Table R405.5.2(1)

**FURNACE EFFICIENCY** . . . . . Table R405.5.2(1)**G****GLAZED FENESTRATION** . . . . . R402.3.2, R402.3.3**H****HEAT PUMP** . . . . . R403.1.2**HEATED SLAB**

Defined . . . . . R202

**HEATING AND COOLING LOADS** . . . . . R302.1, R403.1.2**HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS**

Defined . . . . . R202

**HISTORIC BUILDING** . . . . . R202, R501.6**HOT WATER**

Piping insulation . . . . . R403.5.3

**HOT WATER BOILER**

Outdoor temperature setback..... R403.2

**HVAC SYSTEMS**

## Tests

Postconstruction ..... R403.3.4

Rough-in-test ..... R403.3.4

**I****IDENTIFICATION (MATERIALS,  
EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEM)** .....

R303.1

**INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE  
(see CONDITIONED SPACE)****INFILTRATION, AIR LEAKAGE** ..... R402.4,  
Table R405.5.2(1)

Defined..... R202

**INSPECTIONS**..... R105**INSULATION**

Air-impermeable ..... R202, Table R402.4.1.1

Basement walls ..... R402.2.9

Ceilings with attic spaces ..... R402.2.1

Ceilings without attic spaces ..... R402.2.2

Crawl space walls..... R402.2.11

Duct ..... R403.3.1

Eave baffle ..... R402.2.3

Floors ..... R402.2.6, R402.2.8

Hot water piping ..... R403.5.3

Identification ..... R303.1, R303.1.2

Installation ..... R303.1.1, R303.1.1.1,  
R303.1.2, R303.2,  
Table R402.4.1.1

Masonry veneer ..... R402.2.12

Mass walls ..... R402.2.5

Mechanical system piping ..... R403.4

Product rating ..... R303.1.4

Protection of exposed foundation..... R303.2.1

Protection of piping insulation..... R403.4.1

Requirements ..... Table R402.1.2, R402.2

Slab-on-grade floors ..... R402.2.10

Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors ..... R402.2.6,  
Table R402.2.6

Sunroom ..... R402.2.13

**L****LABELED**

Defined..... R202

Requirements ..... R303.1.3, R402.4.3

**LIGHTING SYSTEMS** ..... R404

Recessed ..... R402.4.5, R404

**LISTED**

Defined ..... R202

**LOG HOMES** ..... R402.1, Table R402.4.1.1**LOW-ENERGY BUILDINGS** ..... R402.1**LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING**

Defined ..... R202

**LUMINAIRE**

Sealed..... R402.4.5

**M****MAINTENANCE INFORMATION** ..... R303.3**MANUAL**

Defined ..... R202

**MANUALS** ..... R101.5.1, R303.3**MASONRY VENEER**

Insulation..... R402.2.12

**MASS**

Wall..... Table 402.1.2, R402.2.5

**MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT** ..... R303**MECHANICAL SYSTEMS AND  
EQUIPMENT** ..... R403, R405.1**MECHANICAL VENTILATION** ..... R403.6,  
Table R403.6.1, Table R405.5.2(1)**MULTIPLE DWELLING UNITS** ..... R403.8**O****OCCUPANCY**

Requirements ..... R101.4, R101.5

**OPAQUE DOOR** ..... R202, R402.3.4**P****PERFORMANCE ANALYSIS** ..... R405**PERMIT (see FEES)**

Work commencing before permit ..... R104.4

**PIPE INSULATION** ..... R403.4, R403.5.3**PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS** ..... R103**POOLS** ..... R403.10

Covers..... R403.10.3

Heaters..... R403.10.1

Time switches..... R403.10.2

**PROPOSED DESIGN**

Defined ..... R202

Requirements ..... R405, Table R405.5.2(1)

**PUMPS**

Time switches..... R403.10.2, R403.5.1.1

## INDEX

**R****R-VALUE**

Defined ..... R202  
 Computation ..... R402.1.3  
 Wood frame to cold formed  
 steel frame ceiling, wall and  
 floor insulation *R*-values ..... Table R402.2.6

**READILY ACCESSIBLE**

Defined ..... R202

**REFERENCED STANDARDS** ..... R107, Chapter 6**REPAIR**

Defined ..... R202  
 Requirements ..... R504

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDING**

Compliance ..... R101.5  
 Defined ..... R202  
 Energy rating index alternative ..... R406  
 Simulated performance alternative ..... R405

**ROOF ASSEMBLY**

Defined ..... R202  
 Requirements ..... R303.1.1.1, R402.2.2,  
 Table R405.5.2(1)

**S****SCOPE** ..... R101.2**SERVICE HOT WATER**

Requirements ..... R403.5

**SHEATHING, INSULATING  
(see INSULATING SHEATHING)****SHGC**  
(see SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT)**SHUTOFF DAMPERS** ..... R403.6**SIMULATED PERFORMANCE**

**ALTERNATIVE** ..... R405  
 Documentation ..... R405.4  
 Mandatory requirements ..... R405.2  
 Performance-based compliance ..... R405.3  
 Report ..... R405.4.2  
 Software tools ..... R405.4.1

**SIZING**

Equipment and system ..... R405.6.1

**SKYLIGHTS** ..... R303.1.3, R402.1.2, R402.3,  
 Table R405.5.2(1)**SNOW MELT SYSTEM CONTROLS** ..... R403.9**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT  
(SHGC)** ..... R103.2, Table R303.1.3(3),  
 R401.3, Table R402.1.2,  
 R402.1.4, R402.3.2,  
 R402.3.3, R402.3.5, R402.5

Defined ..... R202

**STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN**

Defined ..... R202  
 Requirements ..... R405, Table R405.5.2(1)

**STANDARDS, REFERENCED** ..... R107, Chapter 6**STEEL FRAMING** ..... R402.2.6**STOP WORK ORDER** ..... R108

Authority ..... R108.1  
 Emergencies ..... R108.3  
 Failure to comply ..... R108.4  
 Issuance ..... R108.2

**SUNROOM** ..... R402.2.13, R402.3.5, Table R405.5.2(1)

Defined ..... R202  
 Insulation ..... R402.2.13

**SWIMMING POOLS** ..... R403.10**T****THERMAL ISOLATION** ..... R402.2.13, R402.3.5,  
 Table R405.5.2(1)

Defined ..... R202

**THERMAL MASS (see MASS)****THERMAL RESISTANCE (see R-VALUE)****THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE (see U-FACTOR)****THERMOSTAT**

Defined ..... R202  
 Controls ..... R403.1  
 Programmable ..... R403.1.1

**TIME SWITCHES** ..... R403.10.2**TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE**

Residential ..... R405

**TOWNHOUSE (see RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS)****TROPICAL CLIMATE ZONES** ..... R301.4, R401.2.1**U****U-FACTOR**

Alternative ..... R402.1.4, Table R402.1.4, R402.1.5  
 Default door ..... Table R303.1.3(2)  
 Default glazed fenestration ..... Table R303.1.3(1)  
 Defined ..... R202, R402.3.1, R402.5  
 Skylights ..... Table R402.1.2,  
 Table R402.1.4, R402.3.5  
 Sunroom ..... R402.3.5

**V****VALIDITY** ..... R106**VAPOR RETARDER** ..... R402.1.1**VENTILATION** ..... R401.2.1, R403.6,  
 Table R403.6.1, Table R405.5.2(1)

Defined ..... R202

**INDEX****VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT)**

Default glazed fenestration . . . . . Table R303.1.3(3)  
 Defined . . . . . R202

**W****WALL**

Above-grade, defined . . . . . R202  
     Standard reference design . . . . . Table R405.5.2(1)  
 Basement, defined . . . . . R202  
     Installation . . . . . R402.2.9  
     Standard reference design . . . . . Table R405.5.2(1)  
 Crawl space, defined . . . . . R202  
     Installation . . . . . R402.2.11  
     Standard reference design . . . . . Table R405.5.2(1)  
 Exterior, defined . . . . . R202  
 Mass . . . . . R402.2.5  
 Steel-frame . . . . . R402.2.6, Table R402.2.6  
 With partial structural sheathing . . . . . R402.2.7

**WALLS (see EXTERIOR WALLS AND  
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE)****WALLS ADJACENT TO UNCONDITIONED  
SPACE (see BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE)**

**WATER HEATING** . . . . . R401.3, R403.5, R405.1,  
     Table R405.5.2(1)

**WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL  
VENTILATION SYSTEM**

Defined . . . . . R202  
 System fan efficacy . . . . . R403.6.1

**WINDOW AREA**

(see FENESTRATION and GLAZING AREA)



**EDITORIAL CHANGES – FOURTH PRINTING**

Page C-80, **TABLE C405.3.2(1)**: Note a, line 2 now reads . . . application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the

Page C-80, **TABLE C405.3.2(1)**: Note b, line 2 now reads . . . application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor

Page C-82, **TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued**: Note c, line 2 now reads . . . application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the

Page C-82, **TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued**: Note d, line 2 now reads . . . application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor

For the complete errata history of this code, please visit: <https://www.iccsafe.org/errata-central/>



# BENEFITS THAT WORK FOR YOU

No matter where you are in your building career, put the benefits of ICC Membership to work for you!

Membership in ICC connects you to exclusive I-Codes resources, continuing education opportunities and *Members-Only* benefits that include:

- Free code opinions from I-Codes experts
- Free I-Code book(s) or download to new Members\*
- Discounts on I-Code resources, training and certification renewal
- Posting resumes and job search openings through the ICC Career Center
- Mentoring programs and valuable networking opportunities at ICC events
- Free benefits — Corporate and Governmental Members: Your staff can receive free ICC benefits too\*
- *Savings of up to 25% on code books and training materials and more*

Put the benefits of ICC Membership to work for you and your career. Visit [www.iccsafe.org/mem3](http://www.iccsafe.org/mem3) to join now or to renew your Membership. Or call 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233), ext. 33804 to learn more today!



\* Some restrictions apply. Speak with an ICC Member Services Representative for details.

16-12897



*Specify and Approve with*

# CONFIDENCE



**When facing new or unfamiliar materials, how do you know if they comply with building codes and standards?**

ICC-ES® **Evaluation Reports** are the most widely accepted and trusted technical reports for code compliance.

ICC-ES **Building Product Listings** and **PMG Listings** show product compliance with applicable standard(s) referenced in the building and plumbing codes as well as other applicable codes.

ICC-ES provides a one-stop shop for the evaluation, listing and now testing of innovative building products through our newly formed cooperation with Innovation Research Labs, a highly respected ISO 17025 accredited testing lab with over 50 years of experience.

ICC-ES is a subsidiary of ICC®, the publisher of the codes used throughout the U.S. and many global markets, so you can be confident in their code expertise.

**www.icc-es.org | 800-423-6587 x3877**



Look for the ICC-ES Marks of Conformity



17-14105



SOLAR RATING  
& CERTIFICATION  
CORPORATION<sup>®</sup>  
A member of the ICC  
Family of Companies

# ICC-SRCC

The industry experts in Clean and Renewable Energy since 1980, ICC-SRCC fulfills the industry's need for a single, national program that allows manufacturers to rate and test the efficiency of solar equipment. Its primary purpose is to provide authoritative performance ratings, certifications and standards for renewable energy products, with the intention of protecting and providing guidance to consumers, incentive providers, government, and industry.

The corporation is a non-profit, accredited independent third-party certification entity that is wholly funded through fees paid by participants and users. It is unique in that it is the only national certification program established solely for solar thermal products. It is also the only national certification organization whose programs are the direct result of the combined efforts of state organizations and an industry association involved in the administration of standards.

## ICC-SRCC PROGRAMS PROVIDE:

- Standardized comparisons of solar thermal product performance
- Certification to SRCC performance standards
- National recognition
- Product credibility

## ICC-SRCC BENEFITS INCLUDE:

- A national, state-of-the-art performance rating system
- A mechanism to develop consumer confidence
- Rational, defensible criteria for tax credit qualifications and other solar incentive programs

## GROUPS SERVED:

- Consumers
- The Solar Heating & Cooling Industry
- Local, state and federal regulatory bodies



## ICC-SRCC's Small Wind Certification Program

Independent Accredited Certification of Wind Turbines

Designed to promote consumer confidence and mainstream acceptance of small and medium wind technology, ICC-SRCC certification standardizes North American reporting of turbine energy and sound performance. ICC-SRCC issues to certified turbines easy-to-understand labels with Rated Annual Energy Output, Rated Power, and Rated Sound Level. The labels also confirm that certified turbines meet durability and safety requirements of the AWEA Standard. ICC-SRCC publishes Power Curves, Annual Energy Performance Curves, measured sound pressure levels, and other technical information for each model certified.

### BENEFITS FOR CONSUMERS

- Comparison shopping
- Ratings on easy-to-understand labels and reports
- Established pathways to qualify for incentives

### BENEFITS FOR SUPPLIERS

- Increased mainstream credibility
- Conformity with performance and safety standards
- Published power curves and sound levels

**Need more information? Contact Solar Rating & Certification Corporation today!**

[www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org) | 1-888-422-7233, x7735 | 202-370-1800

17-14097

INTERNATIONAL  
CODE  
COUNCIL

People Helping People Build a Safer World®

# GET IMMEDIATE DOWNLOADS OF THE STANDARDS YOU NEED

*Browse hundreds of industry standards adopted by reference. Available to you 24/7!*

Count on ICC for standards from a variety of publishers, including:

ACI  
AISC  
ANSI  
APA  
APSP  
ASHRAE  
ASTM  
AWC

CPSC  
CSA  
DOC  
DOJ  
DOL  
DOTn  
FEMA  
GBI

GYPSUM  
HUD  
ICC  
ISO  
NSF  
SMACNA  
USC

**DOWNLOAD YOUR STANDARDS TODAY!**  
**SHOP.ICCSAFE.ORG**

15-11221